



## **Layer 2 Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x (Catalyst 9600 Switches)**

**First Published:** 2019-04-15

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883





# CONTENTS

---

## CHAPTER 1

### Configuring Spanning Tree Protocol 1

Restrictions for Spanning Tree Protocol 1

Information About Spanning Tree Protocol 1

Spanning Tree Protocol 1

Spanning-Tree Topology and Bridge Protocol Data Units 2

Bridge ID, Device Priority, and Extended System ID 3

Port Priority Versus Path Cost 4

Spanning-Tree Interface States 4

How a Device or Port Becomes the Root Device or Root Port 7

Spanning Tree and Redundant Connectivity 7

Spanning-Tree Address Management 8

Accelerated Aging to Retain Connectivity 8

Spanning-Tree Modes and Protocols 8

Supported Spanning-Tree Instances 9

Spanning-Tree Interoperability and Backward Compatibility 9

Spanning Tree Protocols and IEEE 802.1Q Trunks 10

Spanning Tree and Switch Stacks 10

Default Spanning-Tree Configuration 10

How to Configure Spanning Tree Protocol 11

Changing the Spanning-Tree Mode 12

(Optional) Disabling Spanning Tree 13

(Optional) Configuring the Root Device 13

(Optional) Configuring a Secondary Root Device 14

(Optional) Configuring Port Priority 15

(Optional) Configuring Path Cost 16

(Optional) Configuring the Device Priority of a VLAN 17

(Optional) Configuring the Hello Time	18
(Optional) Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time for a VLAN	19
(Optional) Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time for a VLAN	20
(Optional) Configuring the Transmit Hold-Count	21
Monitoring Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration Status	21
Additional References for Spanning Tree Protocol	22
Feature History for Spanning Tree Protocol	22

---

## CHAPTER 2

### **Configuring Multiple Spanning-Tree Protocol 23**

Prerequisites for Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol	23
Restrictions for MSTP	23
Information About MSTP	24
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration	24
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration Guidelines	24
Root Switch Configuration	25
Multiple Spanning-Tree Regions	25
Internal Spanning Tree, Common and Internal Spanning Tree, and Common Spanning Tree	26
Operations Within an Multiple Spanning Tree Region	26
Operations Between Multiple Spanning Tree Regions	27
IEEE 802.1s Terminology	27
Illustration of Multiple Spanning Tree Regions	28
Hop Count	28
Boundary Ports	29
IEEE 802.1s Implementation	29
Port Role Naming Change	29
Interoperation Between Legacy and Standard Devices	30
Detecting Unidirectional Link Failure	31
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol and Switch Stacks	31
Interoperability with IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol	31
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Overview	32
Port Roles and the Active Topology	32
Rapid Convergence	33
Synchronization of Port Roles	34
Bridge Protocol Data Unit Format and Processing	35

Topology Changes	36
Protocol Migration Process	37
Default Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration	37
How to Configure MSTP and MSTP Parameters	38
Specifying the Multiple Spanning Tree Region Configuration and Enabling Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol	38
(Optional) Configuring the Root Device	39
(Optional) Configuring a Secondary Root Device	40
(Optional) Configuring Port Priority	41
(Optional) Configuring Path Cost	42
(Optional) Configuring the Device Priority	43
(Optional) Configuring the Hello Time	45
Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time	45
Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time	46
(Optional) Configuring the Maximum-Hop Count	47
(Optional) Specifying the Link Type to Ensure Rapid Transitions	47
(Optional) Designating the Neighbor Type	48
Restarting the Protocol Migration Process	49
Additional References for MSTP	50
Feature History for MSTP	50

## CHAPTER 3

<b>Configuring Optional Spanning-Tree Features</b>	<b>51</b>
Information About Optional Spanning-Tree Features	51
PortFast	51
Spanning Tree Protocol PortFast Port Types	52
Bridge Protocol Data Unit Guard	52
Bridge Protocol Data Unit Filtering	53
Bridge Assurance	53
Guidelines for Configuring Bridge Assurance	54
UplinkFast	55
Cross-Stack UplinkFast	57
How Cross-Stack UplinkFast Works	57
Events That Cause Fast Convergence	58
BackboneFast	59

EtherChannel Guard	62
Root Guard	62
Loop Guard	63
How to Configure Optional Spanning-Tree Features	64
(Optional) Enabling PortFast	64
Enabling PortFast Port Types	65
Configuring the PortFast Default State Globally	65
Configuring a PortFast Edge Port on a Specified Interface	66
Configuring a PortFast Network Port on a Specified Interface	68
(Optional) Enabling Bridge Protocol Data Unit Guard	69
Enabling BPDU Filtering	70
Configuring Bridge Assurance	72
(Optional) Enabling UplinkFast for Use with Redundant Links	74
(Optional) Disabling UplinkFast	75
(Optional) Enabling BackboneFast	75
(Optional) Enabling EtherChannel Guard	76
(Optional) Enabling Root Guard	77
(Optional) Enabling Loop Guard	78
Monitoring the Spanning-Tree Status	79
Additional References for Optional Spanning Tree Features	79
Feature History for Optional Spanning Tree Features	79

---

**CHAPTER 4**
**Configuring EtherChannels 81**

Restrictions for EtherChannels	81
Information About EtherChannels	81
EtherChannel Overview	81
Channel Groups and Port-Channel Interfaces	82
Port Aggregation Protocol	83
Port Aggregation Protocol Modes	84
Port Aggregation Protocol Learn Method and Priority	85
Port Aggregation Protocol Interaction with Other Features	85
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	86
Link Aggregation Control Protocol Modes	86
Link Aggregation Control Protocol and Link Redundancy	86

Link Aggregation Control Protocol Interaction with Other Features	87
EtherChannel On Mode	87
Load-Balancing and Forwarding Methods	87
MAC Address Forwarding	88
IP Address Forwarding	88
VLAN ID based Forwarding	88
Load-Balancing Advantages	89
EtherChannel and Switch Stacks	90
Switch Stack and Port Aggregation Protocol	90
Switch Stacks and Link Aggregation Control Protocol	90
Default EtherChannel Configuration	90
EtherChannel Configuration Guidelines	91
Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration Guidelines	92
Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration Guidelines	92
Auto-LAG	92
Auto-LAG Configuration Guidelines	93
How to Configure EtherChannels	93
Configuring Layer 2 EtherChannels	93
Configuring Layer 3 EtherChannels	95
Configuring EtherChannel Load-Balancing	97
Configuring EtherChannel Extended Load-Balancing	99
(Optional) Configuring the Port Aggregation Protocol Learn Method and Priority	100
Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol Hot-Standby Ports	101
Configuring the LACP Max Bundle	101
Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol Port-Channel Standalone Disable	102
Configuring the LACP Port Channel Min-Links	103
(Optional) Configuring the Link Aggregation Control Protocol System Priority	104
(Optional) Configuring the Link Aggregation Control Protocol Port Priority	104
Configuring Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol 1:1 Redundancy Fast Rate Timer	105
Configuring Auto-LAG Globally	106
Configuring Auto-LAG on a Port Interface	107
Configuring Persistence with Auto-LAG	108
Monitoring EtherChannel, Port Aggregation Protocol, and Link Aggregation Control Protocol Status	108
Configuration Examples for EtherChannels	109

Example: Configuring Layer 2 EtherChannels	109
Example: Configuring Layer 3 EtherChannels	110
Example: Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol Hot-Standby Ports	111
Example: Configuring Auto LAG	111
Additional References for EtherChannels	112
Feature History for EtherChannels	112

---

**CHAPTER 5**
**Configuring UniDirectional Link Detection 113**

Restrictions for Configuring UniDirectional Link Detection	113
Information About UniDirectional Link Detection	113
Fast UDLD	114
Modes of Operation	114
Normal Mode	114
Aggressive Mode	114
Methods to Detect Unidirectional Links	115
Neighbor Database Maintenance	115
Event-Driven Detection and Echoing	115
UniDirectional Link Detection Reset Options	116
Default UniDirectional Link Detection Configuration	116
How to Configure UDLD	116
Enabling UniDirectional Link Detection Globally	116
Enabling UniDirectional Link Detection on an Interface	117
Enabling Fast UniDirectional Link Detection on an Interface	118
Enabling Fast UniDirectional Link Detection Error Reporting	119
Disabling UniDirectional Link Detection on Fiber-Optic LAN Interfaces	119
Monitoring and Maintaining UniDirectional Link Detection	120
Console Error Messages For Fast UniDirectional Link Detection	120
Additional References for UniDirectional Link Detection	121
Feature History for UniDirectional Link Detection	121

---

**CHAPTER 6**
**Configuring IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling 123**

Information About IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling	123
IEEE 802.1Q Tunnel Ports in a Service Provider Network	123
Native VLANs	126



System MTU	127
IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling and Other Features	127
Default IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration	128
How to Configure IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling	128
Monitoring Tunneling Status	130
Example: Configuring an IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling Port	130
Feature History for IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling	131

---

## CHAPTER 7

### Configuring VLAN Mapping 133

Prerequisites for VLAN Mapping	133
About VLAN Mapping	133
One-to-One VLAN Mapping	135
Selective Q-in-Q	135
Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port	135
Configuration Guidelines for VLAN Mapping	136
Configuration Guidelines for One-to-One VLAN Mapping	136
Configuration Guidelines for Selective Q-in-Q	137
Configuration Guidelines for Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port	137
How to Configure VLAN Mapping	138
One-to-One VLAN Mapping	138
Selective Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port	140
Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port	142
Feature History for VLAN Mapping	143

---

## CHAPTER 8

### Configuring VXLAN BGP EVPN 145

Guidelines and Limitations for VXLAN BGP EVPN	145
Information About VXLAN BGP EVPN	146
Considerations for VXLAN BGP EVPN deployment	146
Network considerations for VXLAN deployments	148
Considerations for the Transport Network	148
How to Configure VXLAN BGP EVPN	149
Configuring VxLAN BGP EVPN in Bridge Mode	149
Configuring Underlay Transport (Unicast and Multicast) between the VTEPs and the Spines	149
Configuring the VTEP	151

Configuring eBGP on the Spine	153
Configuring eBGP on the VTEP	156
Configuring the NVE Interface and VNIs	159
Configuring L2VPN EVPN on all VTEPs	160
Configuring access customer facing VLAN VTEP	162
Configuring IP VRF on VTEPs for Inter-VxLAN routing	163
Verifying the VXLAN BGP EVPN Configuration	164
Configuration Examples for VXLAN BGP EVPN (EBGP)	165
Configuration Examples for VxLAN BGP EVPN in Bridge Mode	165
Example: Configuring eBGP Multi-AS EVPN VxLAN design model	165
Example: Configuring Underlay Transport (Unicast and Multicast) Between all the VTEPs and the Spine(s):	165
Example: Configuring eBGP with EVPN Address Family Between the Spine(s) and VTEPs:	167
Example: Configuring NVE on all VTEPs	168
Example: Configuring L2VPN EVPN on VTEPs	168
Example: Configuring Access Customer Facing VLAN VTEPs	169
Example: Configuring Additional VNI, EVI and VLAN on VTEPs	169
Example: Configuring IP VRF on VTEPs for Inter-VxLAN routing	170
Example: Configuring Access VLAN Interfaces (SVIs) on VTEPs	170
Example: Configuring Additional L3-VNI in NVE interfaces	170
Example: Configuring Core-facing VLANs and VLAN Interfaces	171
Example: Configuring iBGP/IGP EVPN VxLAN Design Model	171
Example: Verifying L2/L3 VNI in NVE	174
Example: Verifying Multicast in Multicast Routing Table	174
Example: Verifying EVPN Instance in EVPN Manager	176
Example: Verifying MAC Table	176
Example: Verifying MAC entries in EVPN Manager	177
Example: Verifying MAC routes in BGP	177
Example: Verifying MAC routes in Layer 2 Routing Information Base	177
Example: Verifying IP VRF with all SVIs	178
Example: Verifying MAC/IP entries in MAC VRFs (EVIs)	178
Example: Verifying Remote MAC/IP and IP Prefix routes in L3VNI (IP VRF)	178
Example: Verifying IP routes are installed in L3 VNI (IP VRF)	179
Example: Verifying MAC/IP entries in EVPN Manager	179

Example: Verifying MAC/IP routes in Layer 2 Routing Information Base	180
Feature History and Information for VXLAN BGP EVPN	180





# CHAPTER 1

## Configuring Spanning Tree Protocol

This chapter describes how to configure the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) on port-based VLANs on the Catalyst devices. The device can use either the per-VLAN spanning-tree plus (PVST+) protocol based on the IEEE 802.1D standard and Cisco proprietary extensions, or the rapid per-VLAN spanning-tree plus (rapid-PVST+) protocol based on the IEEE 802.1w standard. A device stack appears as a single spanning-tree node to the rest of the network, and all stack members use the same bridge ID.

- [Restrictions for Spanning Tree Protocol, on page 1](#)
- [Information About Spanning Tree Protocol, on page 1](#)
- [How to Configure Spanning Tree Protocol, on page 11](#)
- [Monitoring Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration Status, on page 21](#)
- [Additional References for Spanning Tree Protocol, on page 22](#)
- [Feature History for Spanning Tree Protocol, on page 22](#)

## Restrictions for Spanning Tree Protocol

- An attempt to configure a device as the root device fails if the value necessary to be the root device is less than 1.
- If your network consists of devices that support and do not support the extended system ID, it is unlikely that the device with the extended system ID support will become the root device. The extended system ID increases the device priority value every time the VLAN number is greater than the priority of the connected devices running older software.
- The root device for each spanning tree instance should be a backbone or distribution device. Do not configure an access device as the spanning tree primary root.

## Information About Spanning Tree Protocol

The following sections provide information about spanning tree protocol:

### Spanning Tree Protocol

Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) is a Layer 2 link management protocol that provides path redundancy while preventing loops in the network. For a Layer 2 Ethernet network to function properly, only one active path

can exist between any two stations. Multiple active paths among end stations cause loops in the network. If a loop exists in the network, end stations might receive duplicate messages. Devices might also learn end-station MAC addresses on multiple Layer 2 interfaces. These conditions result in an unstable network. Spanning-tree operation is transparent to end stations, which cannot detect whether they are connected to a single LAN segment or a switched LAN of multiple segments.

The STP uses a spanning-tree algorithm to select one device of a redundantly connected network as the root of the spanning tree. The algorithm calculates the best loop-free path through a switched Layer 2 network by assigning a role to each port based on the role of the port in the active topology:

- Root—A forwarding port elected for the spanning-tree topology
- Designated—A forwarding port elected for every switched LAN segment
- Alternate—A blocked port providing an alternate path to the root bridge in the spanning tree
- Backup—A blocked port in a loopback configuration

The device that has *all* of its ports as the designated role or as the backup role is the root device. The device that has at least *one* of its ports in the designated role is called the designated device.

Spanning tree forces redundant data paths into a standby (blocked) state. If a network segment in the spanning tree fails and a redundant path exists, the spanning-tree algorithm recalculates the spanning-tree topology and activates the standby path. Devices send and receive spanning-tree frames, called bridge protocol data units (BPDUs), at regular intervals. The devices do not forward these frames but use them to construct a loop-free path. BPDUs contain information about the sending device and its ports, including device and MAC addresses, device priority, port priority, and path cost. Spanning tree uses this information to elect the root device and root port for the switched network and the root port and designated port for each switched segment.

When two ports on a device are part of a loop, the spanning-tree and path cost settings control which port is put in the forwarding state and which is put in the blocking state. The spanning-tree port priority value represents the location of a port in the network topology and how well it is located to pass traffic. The path cost value represents the media speed.




---

**Note** The long path cost method is the default STP path cost method.

---




---

**Note** In addition to STP, the device uses keepalive messages to detect loops. By default, keepalive is enabled on Layer 2 ports. To disable keepalive, use the **no keepalive** command in interface configuration mode.

---

## Spanning-Tree Topology and Bridge Protocol Data Units

The stable, active spanning-tree topology of a switched network is controlled by these elements:

- The unique bridge ID (device priority and MAC address) associated with each VLAN on each device. In a switch stack, all switches use the same bridge ID for a given spanning-tree instance.
- The spanning-tree path cost to the root device.
- The port identifier (port priority and MAC address) associated with each Layer 2 interface.

When the devices in a network are powered up, each functions as the root device. Each device sends a configuration BPDU through all its ports. The BPDUs communicate and compute the spanning-tree topology. Each configuration BPDU contains this information:

- The unique bridge ID of the device that the sending device identifies as the root device.
- The spanning-tree path cost to the root
- The bridge ID of the sending device
- Message age
- The identifier of the sending interface
- Values for the hello, forward delay, and max-age protocol timers

When a device receives a configuration BPDU that contains *superior* information (lower bridge ID, lower path cost, and so forth), it stores the information for that port. If this BPDU is received on the root port of the device, the device also forwards it with an updated message to all attached LANs for which it is the designated device.

If a device receives a configuration BPDU that contains *inferior* information to that currently stored for that port, it discards the BPDU. If the device is a designated device for the LAN from which the inferior BPDU was received, it sends that LAN a BPDU containing the up-to-date information stored for that port. In this way, inferior information is discarded, and superior information is propagated on the network.

A BPDU exchange results in these actions:

- One device in the network is elected as the root switch (the logical center of the spanning-tree topology in a switched network). See the figure following the bullets.

For each VLAN, the device with the highest device priority (the lowest numerical priority value) is elected as the root switch. If all devices are configured with the default priority (32768), the devices with the lowest MAC address in the VLAN becomes the root device. The device priority value occupies the most significant bits of the bridge ID, .

- A root port is selected for each device (except the root switch). This port provides the best path (lowest cost) when the device forwards packets to the root switch.
- The shortest distance to the root switch is calculated for each device based on the path cost.
- A designated device for each LAN segment is selected. The designated device incurs the lowest path cost when forwarding packets from that LAN to the root switch. The port through which the designated device is attached to the LAN is called the designated port.

All paths that are not needed to reach the root switch from anywhere in the switched network are placed in the spanning-tree blocking mode.

## Bridge ID, Device Priority, and Extended System ID

The IEEE 802.1D standard requires that each device has a unique bridge identifier (bridge ID), which controls the selection of the root switch. Because each VLAN is considered as a different *logical bridge* with PVST+ and Rapid PVST+, the same device must have a different bridge ID for each configured VLAN. Each VLAN on the device has a unique 8-byte bridge ID. The 2 most-significant bytes are used for the device priority, and the remaining 6 bytes are derived from the device MAC address.

The 2 bytes previously used for the device priority are reallocated into a 4-bit priority value and a 12-bit extended system ID value equal to the VLAN ID.

**Table 1: Device Priority Value and Extended System ID**

Priority Value				Extended System ID (Set Equal to the VLAN ID)										
Bit 16	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2
32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	128	64	32	16	8	4	2

Spanning tree uses the extended system ID, the device priority, and the allocated spanning-tree MAC address to make the bridge ID unique for each VLAN.

Support for the extended system ID affects how you manually configure the root switch, the secondary root switch, and the switch priority of a VLAN. For example, when you change the switch priority value, you change the probability that the switch will be elected as the root switch. Configuring a higher value decreases the probability; a lower value increases the probability.

## Port Priority Versus Path Cost

If a loop occurs, spanning tree uses port priority when selecting an interface to put into the forwarding state. You can assign higher priority values (lower numerical values) to interfaces that you want selected first and lower priority values (higher numerical values) that you want selected last. If all interfaces have the same priority value, spanning tree puts the interface with the lowest interface number in the forwarding state and blocks the other interfaces.

The spanning-tree path cost default value is derived from the media speed of an interface. If a loop occurs, spanning tree uses cost when selecting an interface to put in the forwarding state. You can assign lower cost values to interfaces that you want selected first and higher cost values that you want selected last. If all interfaces have the same cost value, spanning tree puts the interface with the lowest interface number in the forwarding state and blocks the other interfaces.

If your device is a member of a switch stack, you must assign lower cost values to interfaces that you want selected first and higher cost values that you want selected last instead of adjusting its port priority.

## Spanning-Tree Interface States

Propagation delays can occur when protocol information passes through a switched LAN. As a result, topology changes can take place at different times and at different places in a switched network. When an interface transitions directly from nonparticipation in the spanning-tree topology to the forwarding state, it can create temporary data loops. Interfaces must wait for new topology information to propagate through the switched LAN before starting to forward frames. They must allow the frame lifetime to expire for forwarded frames that have used the old topology.

Each Layer 2 interface on a device using spanning tree exists in one of these states:

- **Blocking**—The interface does not participate in frame forwarding.
- **Listening**—The first transitional state after the blocking state when the spanning tree decides that the interface should participate in frame forwarding.
- **Learning**—The interface prepares to participate in frame forwarding.
- **Forwarding**—The interface forwards frames.



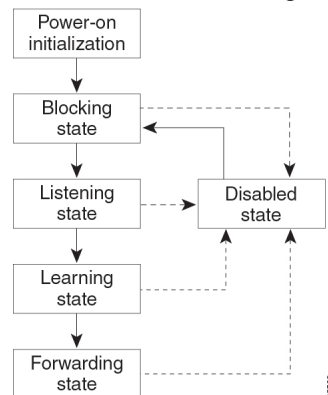
- Disabled—The interface is not participating in spanning tree because of a shutdown port, no link on the port, or no spanning-tree instance running on the port.

An interface moves through these states:

- From initialization to blocking
- From blocking to listening or to disabled
- From listening to learning or to disabled
- From learning to forwarding or to disabled
- From forwarding to disabled

**Figure 1: Spanning-Tree Interface States**

An interface moves through the states.



When you power up the device, spanning tree is enabled by default, and every interface in the device, VLAN, or network goes through the blocking state and the transitory states of listening and learning. Spanning tree stabilizes each interface at the forwarding or blocking state.

When the spanning-tree algorithm places a Layer 2 interface in the forwarding state, this process occurs:

1. The interface is in the listening state while spanning tree waits for protocol information to move the interface to the blocking state.
2. While spanning tree waits for the forward-delay timer to expire, it moves the interface to the learning state and resets the forward-delay timer.
3. In the learning state, the interface continues to block frame forwarding as the device learns end-station location information for the forwarding database.
4. When the forward-delay timer expires, spanning tree moves the interface to the forwarding state, where both learning and frame forwarding are enabled.

## Blocking State

A Layer 2 interface in the blocking state does not participate in frame forwarding. After initialization, a BPDU is sent to each device interface. A device initially functions as the root until it exchanges BPDUs with other devices. This exchange establishes which device in the network is the root or root device. If there is only one device in the network, no exchange occurs, the forward-delay timer expires, and the interface moves to the listening state. An interface always enters the blocking state after device initialization.

An interface in the blocking state performs these functions:

- Discards frames received on the interface
- Discards frames that are switched from another interface for forwarding
- Does not learn addresses
- Receives BPDUs

## Listening State

The listening state is the first state a Layer 2 interface enters after the blocking state. The interface enters this state when the spanning tree decides that the interface should participate in frame forwarding.

An interface in the listening state performs these functions:

- Discards frames received on the interface
- Discards frames that are switched from another interface for forwarding
- Does not learn addresses
- Receives BPDUs

## Learning State

A Layer 2 interface in the learning state prepares to participate in frame forwarding. The interface enters the learning state from the listening state.

An interface in the learning state performs these functions:

- Discards frames received on the interface
- Discards frames that are switched from another interface for forwarding
- Learns addresses
- Receives BPDUs

## Forwarding State

A Layer 2 interface in the forwarding state forwards frames. The interface enters the forwarding state from the learning state.

An interface in the forwarding state performs these functions:

- Receives and forwards frames that are received on the interface.
- Forwards frames that are switched from another interface
- Learns addresses
- Receives BPDUs

## Disabled State

A Layer 2 interface in the disabled state does not participate in frame forwarding or in the spanning tree. An interface in the disabled state is nonoperational.

A disabled interface performs these functions:

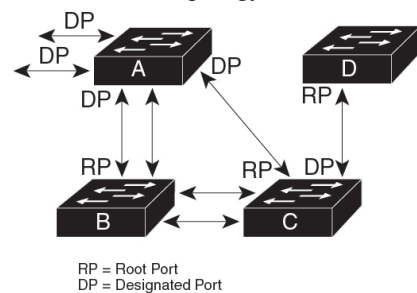
- Discards frames received on the interface
- Discards frames that are switched from another interface for forwarding
- Does not learn addresses
- Does not receive BPDUs

## How a Device or Port Becomes the Root Device or Root Port

If all devices in a network are enabled with default spanning-tree settings, the device with the lowest MAC address becomes the root device.

**Figure 2: Spanning-Tree Topology**

Switch A is elected as the root device because the device priority of all the devices is set to the default (32768) and Switch A has the lowest MAC address. However, because of traffic patterns, number of forwarding interfaces, or link types, Switch A might not be the ideal root device. By increasing the priority (lowering the numerical value) of the ideal device so that it becomes the root device, you force a spanning-tree recalculation to form a new topology with the ideal device as the root.



When the spanning-tree topology is calculated based on default parameters, the path between source and destination end stations in a switched network might not be ideal. For instance, connecting higher-speed links to an interface that has a higher number than the root port can cause a root-port change. The goal is to make the fastest link the root port.

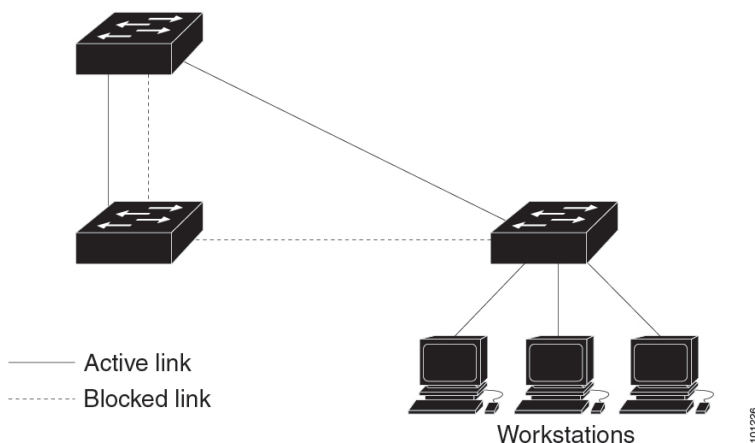
For example, assume that one port on Switch B is a Gigabit Ethernet link and that another port on Switch B (a 10/100 link) is the root port. Network traffic might be more efficient over the Gigabit Ethernet link. By changing the spanning-tree port priority on the Gigabit Ethernet port to a higher priority (lower numerical value) than the root port, the Gigabit Ethernet port becomes the new root port.

## Spanning Tree and Redundant Connectivity

You can create a redundant backbone with spanning tree by connecting two switch interfaces to another device or to two different devices. Spanning tree automatically disables one interface but enables it if the other one fails. If one link is high-speed and the other is low-speed, the low-speed link is always disabled. If the speeds are the same, the port priority and port ID are added together, and spanning tree disables the link with the highest value.

[Figure 3: Spanning Tree and Redundant Connectivity, on page 8](#) shows redundant connectivity on a spanning tree topology.

Figure 3: Spanning Tree and Redundant Connectivity



You can also create redundant links between devices by using EtherChannel groups.

## Spanning-Tree Address Management

IEEE 802.1D specifies 17 multicast addresses, ranging from 0x00180C2000000 to 0x0180C2000010, to be used by different bridge protocols. These addresses are static addresses that cannot be removed.

Regardless of the spanning-tree state, each device in the stack receives but does not forward packets that are destined for addresses between 0x0180C2000000 and 0x0180C200000F.

If spanning tree is enabled, the CPU on the switch or on each switch in the stack receives packets that are destined for 0x0180C2000000 and 0x0180C2000010. If spanning tree is disabled, the switch or each switch in the stack forwards those packets as unknown multicast addresses.

## Accelerated Aging to Retain Connectivity

The default for aging dynamic addresses is 5 minutes, the default setting of the **mac address-table aging-time** global configuration command. However, a spanning-tree reconfiguration can cause many station locations to change. Because these stations could be unreachable for 5 minutes or more during a reconfiguration, the address-aging time is accelerated so that station addresses can be dropped from the address table and then relearned. The accelerated aging is the same as the forward-delay parameter value (**spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* forward-time seconds** global configuration command) when the spanning tree reconfigures.

Because each VLAN is a separate spanning-tree instance, the switch accelerates aging on a per-VLAN basis. A spanning-tree reconfiguration on one VLAN can cause the dynamic addresses that are learned on that VLAN to be subject to accelerated aging. Dynamic addresses on other VLANs can be unaffected and remain subject to the aging interval entered for the switch.

## Spanning-Tree Modes and Protocols

The device supports these spanning-tree modes and protocols:

- **PVST+**—This spanning-tree mode is based on the IEEE 802.1D standard and Cisco proprietary extensions. The PVST+ runs on each VLAN on the device up to the maximum supported, ensuring that each has a loop-free path through the network.

The PVST+ provides Layer 2 load-balancing for the VLAN on which it runs. You can create different logical topologies by using the VLANs on your network to ensure that all of your links are used but that

no one link is oversubscribed. Each instance of PVST+ on a VLAN has a single root switch. This root switch propagates the spanning-tree information that is associated with that VLAN to all other devices in the network. Because each device has the same information about the network, this process ensures that the network topology is maintained.

- **Rapid PVST+—**Rapid PVST+ is the default STP mode on your device. This spanning-tree mode is the same as PVST+ except that it uses a rapid convergence based on the IEEE 802.1w standard. To provide rapid convergence, the Rapid PVST+ immediately deletes dynamically learned MAC address entries on a per-port basis upon receiving a topology change. By contrast, PVST+ uses a short aging time for dynamically learned MAC address entries.

Rapid PVST+ uses the same configuration as PVST+ (except where noted), and the device needs only minimal extra configuration. The benefit of Rapid PVST+ is that you can migrate a large PVST+ install base to Rapid PVST+ without having to learn the complexities of the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) configuration and without having to reprovision your network. In Rapid PVST+ mode, each VLAN runs its own spanning-tree instance up to the maximum supported.

- **MSTP—**This spanning-tree mode is based on the IEEE 802.1s standard. You can map multiple VLANs to the same spanning-tree instance, which reduces the number of spanning-tree instances that are required to support many VLANs. The MSTP runs on top of the RSTP (based on IEEE 802.1w), which provides for rapid convergence of the spanning tree by eliminating the forward delay and by quickly transitioning root ports and designated ports to the forwarding state. In a switch stack, the cross-stack rapid transition (CSRT) feature performs the same function as RSTP. You cannot run MSTP without RSTP or CSRT.

## Supported Spanning-Tree Instances

In PVST+ or Rapid PVST+ mode, the device or device stack supports up to 1000 spanning-tree instances.

In MSTP mode, the device or device stack supports up to 64 MST instances. The number of VLANs that can be mapped to a particular MST instance is 1000.

## Spanning-Tree Interoperability and Backward Compatibility

In a mixed MSTP and PVST+ network, the common spanning-tree (CST) root must be inside the MST backbone, and a PVST+ device cannot connect to multiple MST regions.

When a network contains devices running Rapid PVST+ and devices running PVST+, we recommend that the Rapid PVST+ devices and PVST+ devices be configured for different spanning-tree instances. In the Rapid PVST+ spanning-tree instances, the root switch must be a Rapid PVST+ device. In the PVST+ instances, the root switch must be a PVST+ device. The PVST+ devices should be at the edge of the network.

All stack members run the same version of spanning tree (all PVST+, all Rapid PVST+, or all MSTP).

**Table 2: PVST+, MSTP, and Rapid-PVST+ Interoperability and Compatibility**

	<b>PVST+</b>	<b>MSTP</b>	<b>Rapid PVST+</b>
PVST+	Yes	Yes (with restrictions)	Yes (reverts to PVST+)
MSTP	Yes (with restrictions)	Yes	Yes (reverts to PVST+)
Rapid PVST+	Yes (reverts to PVST+)	Yes (reverts to PVST+)	Yes

## Spanning Tree Protocols and IEEE 802.1Q Trunks

The IEEE 802.1Q standard for VLAN trunks imposes some limitations on the spanning-tree strategy for a network. The standard requires only one spanning-tree instance for *all* VLANs allowed on the trunks. However, in a network of Cisco devices that are connected through IEEE 802.1Q trunks, the devices maintain one spanning-tree instance for *each* VLAN allowed on the trunks.

When you connect a Cisco device to a non-Cisco device through an IEEE 802.1Q trunk, the Cisco device uses PVST+ to provide spanning-tree interoperability. If Rapid PVST+ is enabled, the device uses it instead of PVST+. The device combines the spanning-tree instance of the IEEE 802.1Q VLAN of the trunk with the spanning-tree instance of the non-Cisco IEEE 802.1Q device.

However, all PVST+ or Rapid PVST+ information is maintained by Cisco devices that are separated by a cloud of non-Cisco IEEE 802.1Q devices. The non-Cisco IEEE 802.1Q cloud separating the Cisco devices is treated as a single trunk link between the devices.

Rapid PVST+ is automatically enabled on IEEE 802.1Q trunks, and no user configuration is required. The external spanning-tree behavior on access ports and Inter-Switch Link (ISL) trunk ports is not affected by PVST+.

## Spanning Tree and Switch Stacks

When the switch stack is operating in PVST+ or Rapid PVST+ mode:

- A switch stack appears as a single spanning-tree node to the rest of the network, and all stack members use the same bridge ID for a given spanning tree. The bridge ID is derived from the MAC address of the active switch.
- When a new device joins the stack, it sets its bridge ID to the active switch bridge ID. If the newly added device has the lowest ID and if the root path cost is the same among all stack members, the newly added device becomes the stack root.
- When a stack member leaves the stack, spanning-tree reconvergence occurs within the stack (and possibly outside the stack). The remaining stack member with the lowest stack port ID becomes the stack root.
- If the switch stack is the spanning-tree root and the active switch fails or leaves the stack, the standby switch becomes the new active switch, bridge IDs remain the same, and a spanning-tree reconvergence might occur.
- If a neighboring device external to the switch stack fails or is powered down, normal spanning-tree processing occurs. Spanning-tree reconvergence might occur as a result of losing a device in the active topology.
- If a new device external to the switch stack is added to the network, normal spanning-tree processing occurs. Spanning-tree reconvergence might occur as a result of adding a device in the network.

## Default Spanning-Tree Configuration

**Table 3: Default Spanning-Tree Configuration**

Feature	Default Setting
Enable state	Enabled on VLAN 1.

Feature	Default Setting
Spanning-tree mode	Rapid PVST+ ( PVST+ and MST disabled.)
Device priority	32768
Spanning-tree port priority (configurable on a per-interface basis)	128
Spanning-tree port cost (configurable on a per-interface basis)	10 Mbps: 2000000 100 Mbps: 200000 1 Gbps: 20000 10 Gbps: 2000 40 Gbps: 500 100 Gbps: 200 1 Tbps: 20 10 Tbps: 2
Spanning-tree VLAN port priority (configurable on a per-VLAN basis)	128
Spanning-tree VLAN port cost (configurable on a per-VLAN basis)	10 Mbps: 2000000 100 Mbps: 200000 1 Gbps: 20000 10 Gbps: 2000 40 Gbps: 500 100 Gbps: 200 1 Tbps: 20 10 Tbps: 2
Spanning-tree timers	Hello time: 2 seconds Forward-delay time: 15 seconds Maximum-aging time: 20 seconds Transmit hold count: 6 BPDUs



**Note** Beginning in Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)E, the default STP mode is Rapid PVST+.

## How to Configure Spanning Tree Protocol

The following sections provide information about configuring spanning tree protocol:

## Changing the Spanning-Tree Mode

The switch supports three spanning-tree modes: per-VLAN spanning tree plus (PVST+), Rapid PVST+, or Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP). By default, the device runs the Rapid PVST+ protocol.

If you want to enable a mode that is different from the default mode, this procedure is required.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mode {pvst   mst   rapid-pvst}</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mode pvst</b>	Configures a spanning-tree mode. All stack members run the same version of spanning tree. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>pvst</b> to enable PVST+.</li> <li>• Select <b>mst</b> to enable MSTP.</li> <li>• Select <b>rapid-pvst</b> to enable rapid PVST+.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface GigabitEthernet1/0/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. Valid interfaces include physical ports, VLANs, and port channels. The VLAN ID range is 1 to 4094. The port-channel range is 1 to 128.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>spanning-tree link-type point-to-point</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree link-type point-to-point</b>	Specifies that the link type for this port is point-to-point. If you connect this port (local port) to a remote port through a point-to-point link and the local port becomes a designated port, the device negotiates with the remote port and rapidly changes the local port to the forwarding state.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>clear spanning-tree detected-protocols</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>clear spanning-tree detected-protocols</b>	If any port on the device is connected to a port on a legacy IEEE 802.1D device, this command restarts the protocol migration process on the entire device.



	Command or Action	Purpose
		This step is optional if the designated device detects that this device is running rapid PVST+.

## (Optional) Disabling Spanning Tree

Spanning tree is enabled by default on VLAN 1 and on all newly created VLANs up to the spanning-tree limit. Disable spanning tree only if you are sure that there are no loops in the network topology.



**Caution** When spanning tree is disabled and loops are present in the topology, excessive traffic and indefinite packet duplication can drastically reduce network performance.

To disable spanning tree, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-id</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>no spanning-tree vlan 300</b>	For <i>vlan-id</i> , the range is 1 to 4094.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring the Root Device

To configure a device as the root for the specified VLAN, use the **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* root** global configuration command to modify the device priority from the default value (32768) to a significantly lower value. When you enter this command, the software checks the switch priority of the root switches for each VLAN. Because of the extended system ID support, the switch sets its own priority for the specified VLAN to 24576 if this value causes this switch to become the root for the specified VLAN.

Use the **diameter** keyword to specify the Layer 2 network diameter (that is, the maximum number of device hops between any two end stations in the Layer 2 network). When you specify the network diameter, the device automatically sets an optimal hello time, forward-delay time, and maximum-age time for a network

of that diameter, which can significantly reduce the convergence time. You can use the **hello** keyword to override the automatically calculated hello time.

To configure the root device, perform this procedure:

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-id</i> root primary</b> <b>[<i>diameter net-diameter</i> ]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree vlan 20-24</b> <b>root primary diameter 4</b>	Configures a device to become the root for the specified VLAN. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>(Optional) For <b>diameter net-diameter</b>, specify the maximum number of devices between any two end stations. The range is 2 to 7.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

#### What to do next

After configuring the switch as the root switch, we recommend that you avoid manually configuring the hello time, forward-delay time, and maximum-age time through the **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* hello-time**, **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* forward-time**, and the **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* max-age** global configuration commands.

## (Optional) Configuring a Secondary Root Device

When you configure a switch as the secondary root, the switch priority is modified from the default value (32768) to 28672. With this priority, the switch is likely to become the root switch for the specified VLAN if the primary root switch fails. This is assuming that the other network switches use the default switch priority of 32768, and therefore, are unlikely to become the root switch.

You can execute this command on more than one switch to configure multiple backup root switches. Use the same network diameter and hello-time values that you used when you configured the primary root switch with the **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* root primary** global configuration command.

To configure a secondary root device, perform this procedure:

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-id</i> root secondary</b> <b>[<i>diameter net-diameter</i> ]</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree vlan 20-24</b> <b>root secondary diameter 4</b>	Configures a device to become the secondary root for the specified VLAN.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>(Optional) For <b>diameter <i>net-diameter</i></b>, specify the maximum number of devices between any two end stations. The range is 2 to 7.</li> </ul> Use the same network diameter value that you used when configuring the primary root switch.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring Port Priority

To configure port priority, perform this procedure:

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config) # <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.  Valid interfaces include physical ports and port-channel logical interfaces ( <b>port-channel port-channel-number</b> ).
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree port-priority priority</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if) # <b>spanning-tree port-priority 0</b>	Configures the port priority for an interface.  For <i>priority</i> , the range is 0 to 240, in increments of 16; the default is 128. Valid values are 0, 16, 32, 48, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160, 176, 192, 208, 224, and 240. All other values are rejected. The lower the number, the higher the priority.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan vlan-id port-priority priority</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if) # <b>spanning-tree vlan 20-25 port-priority 0</b>	Configures the port priority for a VLAN.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>For <i>priority</i>, the range is 0 to 240, in increments of 16; the default is 128. Valid values are 0, 16, 32, 48, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160, 176, 192, 208, 224, and 240. All other values are rejected. The lower the number, the higher the priority.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring Path Cost

To configure path cost, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. Valid interfaces include physical ports and port-channel logical interfaces ( <b>port-channel port-channel-number</b> ).
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree cost cost</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree cost 250</b>	Configures the cost for an interface. If a loop occurs, spanning tree uses the path cost when selecting an interface to place into the forwarding state. A lower path cost represents higher-speed transmission. For <i>cost</i> , the range is 1 to 200000000; the default value is derived from the media speed of the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan vlan-id cost cost</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree vlan 10,12-15,20 cost 300</b>	Configures the cost for a VLAN. If a loop occurs, spanning tree uses the path cost when selecting an interface to place into the forwarding state. A lower path cost represents higher-speed transmission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>For <i>cost</i>, the range is 1 to 200000000; the default value is derived from the media speed of the interface.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

The **show spanning-tree interface interface-id** privileged EXEC command displays information only for ports that are in a link-up operative state. Otherwise, you can use the **show running-config** privileged EXEC command to confirm the configuration.

## (Optional) Configuring the Device Priority of a VLAN

You can configure the switch priority and make it more likely that a standalone switch or a switch in the stack will be chosen as the root switch.



**Note** Exercise care when using this command. For most situations, we recommend that you use the **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* root primary** and the **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* root secondary** global configuration commands to modify the switch priority.

To configure device priority of a VLAN, perform this procedure:

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-id</i> priority <i>priority</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree vlan 20 priority 8192</b>	Configures the device priority of a VLAN. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>For <i>priority</i>, the range is 0 to 61440 in increments of 4096; the default is 32768. The lower the number, the more likely the switch will be chosen as the root switch.</li> </ul> Valid priority values are 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344, and 61440. All other values are rejected.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring the Hello Time

The hello time is the time interval between configuration messages that are generated and sent by the root switch.

To configure the hello time, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-id</i> hello-time <i>seconds</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree vlan 20-24 hello-time 3</b>	Configures the hello time of a VLAN. The hello time is the time interval between configuration messages that are generated and sent by the root switch. These messages mean that the switch is alive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>• For <i>seconds</i>, the range is 1 to 10; the default is 2.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**(Optional) Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time for a VLAN**

To configure the forwarding-delay time for a VLAN, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-id</i> forward-time <i>seconds</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree vlan 20,25 forward-time 18</b>	Configures the forward time of a VLAN. The forwarding delay is the number of seconds an interface waits before changing from its spanning-tree learning and listening states to the forwarding state.

## (Optional) Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time for a VLAN

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>For <i>seconds</i>, the range is 4 to 30; the default is 15.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time for a VLAN

To configure the maximum-aging time for a VLAN, perform this procedure:

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-id</i> max-age <i>seconds</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree vlan 20 max-age 30</b>	Configures the maximum-aging time of a VLAN. The maximum-aging time is the number of seconds a switch waits without receiving spanning-tree configuration messages before attempting a reconfiguration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>vlan-id</i>, you can specify a single VLAN identified by VLAN ID number, a range of VLANs separated by a hyphen, or a series of VLANs separated by a comma. The range is 1 to 4094.</li> <li>For <i>seconds</i>, the range is 6 to 40; the default is 20.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



## (Optional) Configuring the Transmit Hold-Count

You can configure the BPDU burst size by changing the transmit hold count value.



**Note** Changing this parameter to a higher value can have a significant impact on CPU utilization, especially in Rapid PVST+ mode. Lowering this value can slow down convergence in certain scenarios. We recommend that you maintain the default setting.

To configure the transmit hold-count, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree transmit hold-count</b> <i>value</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree transmit hold-count 6</b>	Configures the number of BPDUs that can be sent before pausing for 1 second. For <i>value</i> , the range is 1 to 20; the default is 6.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Monitoring Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration Status

Table 4: Commands for Displaying STP Configuration Status

<b>show spanning-tree active</b>	Displays STP configuration information on active interfaces only.
<b>show spanning-tree detail</b>	Displays a detailed summary of interface information.
<b>show spanning-tree vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Displays STP configuration information for the specified VLAN.
<b>show spanning-tree interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Displays STP configuration information for the specified interface.
<b>show spanning-tree interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>portfast</b>	Displays STP portfast information for the specified interface.

<b>show spanning-tree summary [totals]</b>	Displays a summary of interface states or displays the total lines of the state section.
--	--

To clear STP counters, use the **clear spanning-tree** [**interface interface-id**] privileged EXEC command.

## Additional References for Spanning Tree Protocol

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
For complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.	See the Layer 2/3 Commands section of the <i>Command Reference (Catalyst 9600 Series Switches)</i>

## Feature History for Spanning Tree Protocol

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

**Table 5: New Feature History**

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	Spanning Tree Protocol	STP is a Layer 2 link management protocol that provides path redundancy while preventing loops in the network.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>.



## CHAPTER 2

# Configuring Multiple Spanning-Tree Protocol

- [Prerequisites for Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol, on page 23](#)
- [Restrictions for MSTP, on page 23](#)
- [Information About MSTP, on page 24](#)
- [How to Configure MSTP and MSTP Parameters, on page 38](#)
- [Additional References for MSTP, on page 50](#)
- [Feature History for MSTP, on page 50](#)

## Prerequisites for Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

- For two or more devices to be in the same multiple spanning tree (MST) region, they must have the same VLAN-to-instance map, the same configuration revision number, and the same name.
- For load-balancing across redundant paths in the network to work, all VLAN-to-instance mapping assignments must match; otherwise, all traffic flows on a single link.
- For load-balancing between a per-VLAN spanning tree plus (PVST+) and an MST cloud or between a rapid-PVST+ and an MST cloud to work, all MST boundary ports must be forwarding. MST boundary ports are forwarding when the root of the internal spanning tree (IST) of the MST cloud is the root of the common spanning tree (CST). If the MST cloud consists of multiple MST regions, one of the MST regions must contain the CST root, and all of the other MST regions must have a better path to the root contained within the MST cloud than a path through the PVST+ or rapid-PVST+ cloud. You might have to manually configure the devices in the clouds.

## Restrictions for MSTP

- The switch stack supports up to 65 MST instances. The number of VLANs that can be mapped to a particular MST instance is the maximum active VLAN supported by a given switch.
- PVST+, Rapid PVST+, and MSTP are supported, but only one version can be active at any time. (For example, all VLANs run PVST+, all VLANs run Rapid PVST+, or all VLANs run MSTP.)
- VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) propagation of the MST configuration is not supported. However, you can manually configure the MST configuration (region name, revision number, and VLAN-to-instance mapping) on each device within the MST region by using the command-line interface (CLI) or through the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) support.

- Partitioning the network into a large number of regions is not recommended. However, if this situation is unavoidable, we recommend that you partition the switched LAN into smaller LANs interconnected by routers or non-Layer 2 devices.
- A region can have one member or multiple members with the same MST configuration; each member must be capable of processing rapid spanning tree protocol (RSTP) Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs). There is no limit to the number of MST regions in a network, but each region can only support up to 64 spanning-tree instances. You can assign a VLAN to only one spanning-tree instance at a time.

## Information About MSTP

The following sections provide information about Multiple Spanning-Tree Protocol (MSTP):

### Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration

Multiple Spanning-Tree Protocol (MSTP), which uses Rapid Spanning-Tree Protocol (RSTP) for rapid convergence, enables multiple VLANs to be grouped into and mapped to the same spanning-tree instance, reducing the number of spanning-tree instances that are needed to support many VLANs. The MSTP provides for multiple forwarding paths for data traffic, enables load balancing, and reduces the number of spanning-tree instances that are required to support many VLANs. It improves the fault tolerance of the network because a failure in one instance (forwarding path) does not affect other instances (forwarding paths).



---

**Note** The multiple spanning-tree (MST) implementation is based on the IEEE 802.1s standard.

---

The most common initial deployment of MSTP is in the backbone and distribution layers of a Layer 2 switched network. This deployment provides the highly available network that is required in a service-provider environment.

When the device is in the MST mode, the RSTP, which is based on IEEE 802.1w, is automatically enabled. The RSTP provides rapid convergence of the spanning tree through explicit handshaking that eliminates the IEEE 802.1D forwarding delay and quickly transitions root ports and designated ports to the forwarding state.

Both MSTP and RSTP improve the spanning-tree operation and maintain backward compatibility with equipment that is based on the (original) IEEE 802.1D spanning tree, with existing Cisco-proprietary Multiple Instance STP (MISTP), and with existing Cisco PVST+ and rapid per-VLAN spanning-tree plus (Rapid PVST+).

A device stack appears as a single spanning-tree node to the rest of the network, and all stack members use the same device ID.

### Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration Guidelines

- When you enable MST by using the **spanning-tree mode mst** global configuration command, RSTP is automatically enabled.
- For configuration guidelines about UplinkFast, BackboneFast, and cross-stack UplinkFast, see the relevant sections in the Related Topics section.

- When the device is in MST mode, it uses the long path-cost calculation method (32 bits) to compute the path cost values. With the long path-cost calculation method, the following path cost values are supported:

Speed	Path Cost Value
10 Mb/s	2,000,000
100 Mb/s	200,000
1 Gb/s	20,000
10 Gb/s	2,000
100 Gb/s	200

## Root Switch Configuration

The switch maintains a spanning-tree instance for the group of VLANs mapped to it. A device ID, consisting of the switch priority and the switch MAC address, is associated with each instance. For a group of VLANs, the switch with the lowest device ID becomes the root switch.

When you configure a switch as the root, you modify the switch priority from the default value (32768) to a significantly lower value so that the switch becomes the root switch for the specified spanning-tree instance. When you enter this command, the switch checks the switch priorities of the root switches. Because of the extended system ID support, the switch sets its own priority for the specified instance to 24576 if this value will cause this switches to become the root for the specified spanning-tree instance.

If any root switch for the specified instance has a switch priority lower than 24576, the switch sets its own priority to 4096 less than the lowest switch priority. (4096 is the value of the least-significant bit of a 4-bit switch priority value. For more information, see [Bridge ID, Device Priority, and Extended System ID](#).)

If your network consists of switches that support and do not support the extended system ID, it is unlikely that the switch with the extended system ID support will become the root switch. The extended system ID increases the switch priority value every time the VLAN number is greater than the priority of the connected switches running older software.

The root switch for each spanning-tree instance should be a backbone or distribution switch. Do not configure an access switch as the spanning-tree primary root.

Use the **diameter** keyword, which is available only for MST instance 0, to specify the Layer 2 network diameter (that is, the maximum number of switch hops between any two end stations in the Layer 2 network). When you specify the network diameter, the switch automatically sets an optimal hello time, forward-delay time, and maximum-age time for a network of that diameter, which can significantly reduce the convergence time. You can use the **hello** keyword to override the automatically calculated hello time.

## Multiple Spanning-Tree Regions

For switches to participate in multiple spanning-tree (MST) instances, you must consistently configure the switches with the same MST configuration information. A collection of interconnected switches that have the same MST configuration comprises an MST region.

The MST configuration controls to which MST region each device belongs. The configuration includes the name of the region, the revision number, and the MST VLAN-to-instance assignment map. You configure

the device for a region by specifying the MST region configuration on it. You can map VLANs to an MST instance, specify the region name, and set the revision number. For instructions and an example, select the "Specifying the MST Region Configuration and Enabling MSTP" link in Related Topics.

A region can have one or multiple members with the same MST configuration. Each member must be capable of processing RSTP bridge protocol data units (BPDUs). There is no limit to the number of MST regions in a network, but each region can support up to 64 spanning-tree instances. Instances can be identified by any number in the range from 0 to 4094. You can assign a VLAN to only one spanning-tree instance at a time.

## Internal Spanning Tree, Common and Internal Spanning Tree, and Common Spanning Tree

Unlike PVST+ and Rapid PVST+ in which all the spanning-tree instances are independent, the MSTP establishes and maintains two types of spanning trees:

- An internal spanning tree (IST), which is the spanning tree that runs in an MST region.

Within each MST region, the MSTP maintains multiple spanning-tree instances. Instance 0 is a special instance for a region, known as the internal spanning tree (IST). All other MST instances are numbered from 1 to 4094.

The IST is the only spanning-tree instance that sends and receives BPDUs. All of the other spanning-tree instance information is contained in M-records, which are encapsulated within MSTP BPDUs. Because the MSTP BPDU carries information for all instances, the number of BPDUs that need to be processed to support multiple spanning-tree instances is significantly reduced.

All MST instances within the same region share the same protocol timers, but each MST instance has its own topology parameters, such as root switch ID, root path cost, and so forth. By default, all VLANs are assigned to the IST.

An MST instance is local to the region; for example, MST instance 1 in region A is independent of MST instance 1 in region B, even if regions A and B are interconnected.

- A common and internal spanning tree (CIST), which is a collection of the ISTs in each MST region, and the common spanning tree (CST) that interconnects the MST regions and single spanning trees.

The spanning tree that is computed in a region appears as a subtree in the CST that encompasses the entire switched domain. The CIST is formed by the spanning-tree algorithm running among switches that support the IEEE 802.1w, IEEE 802.1s, and IEEE 802.1D standards. The CIST inside an MST region is the same as the CST outside a region.

## Operations Within an Multiple Spanning Tree Region

The IST connects all the MSTP switches in a region. When the IST converges, the root of the IST becomes the CIST regional root. It is the switch within the region with the lowest device ID and path cost to the CIST root. The CIST regional root is also the CIST root if there is only one region in the network. If the CIST root is outside the region, one of the MSTP switches at the boundary of the region is selected as the CIST regional root.

When an MSTP switch initializes, it sends BPDUs claiming itself as the root of the CIST and the CIST regional root, with both of the path costs to the CIST root and to the CIST regional root set to zero. The switch also initializes all of its MST instances and claims to be the root for all of them. If the switch receives superior MST root information (lower device ID, lower path cost, and so forth) than currently stored for the port, it relinquishes its claim as the CIST regional root.

During initialization, a region might have many subregions, each with its own CIST regional root. As switches receive superior IST information, they leave their old subregions and join the new subregion that contains the true CIST regional root. All subregions shrink except for the one that contains the true CIST regional root.

For correct operation, all switches in the MST region must agree on the same CIST regional root. Therefore, any two switches in the region only synchronize their port roles for an MST instance if they converge to a common CIST regional root.

## Operations Between Multiple Spanning Tree Regions

If there are multiple regions or legacy IEEE 802.1D switches within the network, MSTP establishes and maintains the CST, which includes all MST regions and all legacy STP switches in the network. The MST instances combine with the IST at the boundary of the region to become the CST.

The IST connects all the MSTP switches in the region and appears as a subtree in the CIST that encompasses the entire switched domain. The root of the subtree is the CIST regional root. The MST region appears as a virtual switch to adjacent STP switches and MST regions.

Only the CST instance sends and receives BPDUs, and MST instances add their spanning-tree information into the BPDUs to interact with neighboring switches and compute the final spanning-tree topology. Because of this, the spanning-tree parameters that are related to BPDU transmission (for example, hello time, forward time, max-age, and max-hops) are configured only on the CST instance but affect all MST instances. Parameters that are related to the spanning-tree topology (for example, switch priority, port VLAN cost, and port VLAN priority) can be configured on both the CST instance and the MST instance.

MSTP switches use Version 3 RSTP BPDUs or IEEE 802.1D STP BPDUs to communicate with legacy IEEE 802.1D devices. MSTP switches use MSTP BPDUs to communicate with MSTP devices.

## IEEE 802.1s Terminology

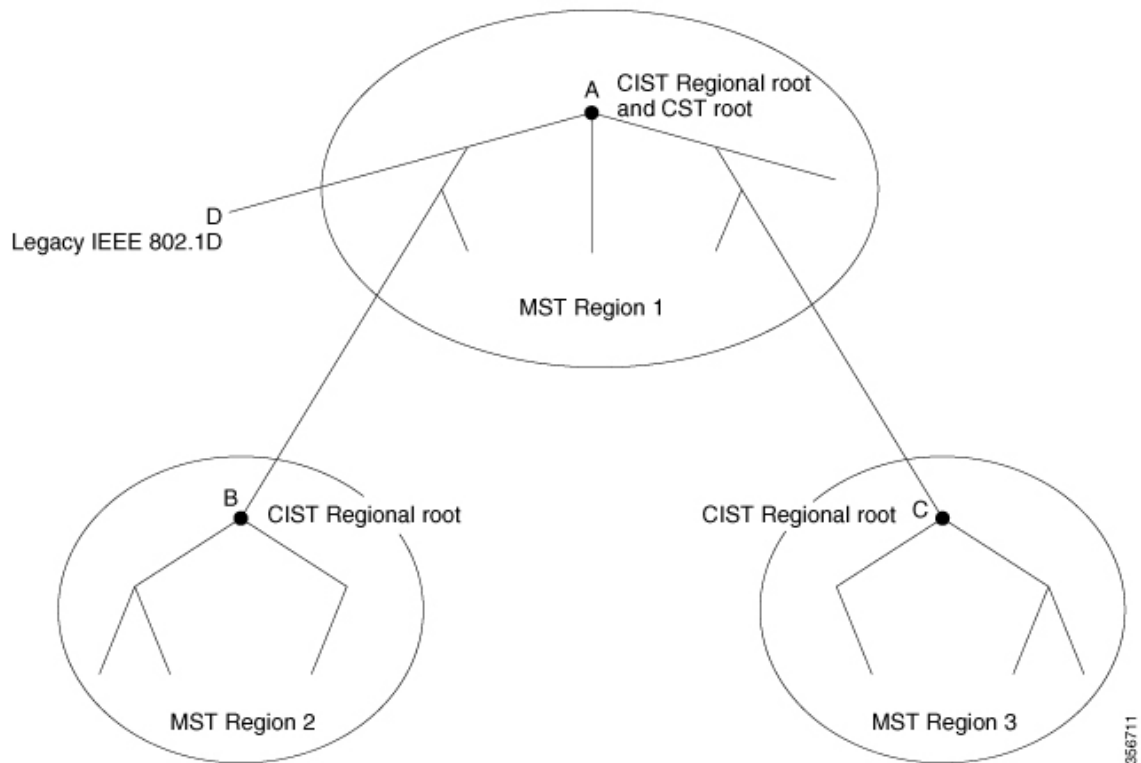
Some MST naming conventions that are used in Cisco's prestandard implementation have been changed to identify some *internal* or *regional* parameters. These parameters are significant only within an MST region, as opposed to external parameters that are relevant to the whole network. Because the CIST is the only spanning-tree instance that spans the whole network, only the CIST parameters require the external rather than the internal or regional qualifiers.

- The CIST root is the root switch for the unique instance that spans the whole network, the CIST.
- The CIST external root path cost is the cost to the CIST root. This cost is left unchanged within an MST region. Remember that an MST region looks like a single switch for the CIST. The CIST external root path cost is the root path cost that is calculated between these virtual devices and devices that do not belong to any region.
- If the CIST root is in the region, the CIST regional root is the CIST root. Otherwise, the CIST regional root is the closest switch to the CIST root in the region. The CIST regional root acts as a root switch for the IST.
- The CIST internal root path cost is the cost to the CIST regional root in a region. This cost is only relevant to the IST, instance 0.

## Illustration of Multiple Spanning Tree Regions

This figure displays three MST regions and a legacy IEEE 802.1D device (D). The CIST regional root for region 1 (A) is also the CIST root. The CIST regional root for region 2 (B) and the CIST regional root for region 3 (C) are the roots for their respective subtrees within the CIST. The RSTP runs in all regions.

**Figure 4: MST Regions, CIST Regional Root, and CST Root**



## Hop Count

The IST and MST instances do not use the message-age and maximum-age information in the configuration BPDU to compute the spanning-tree topology. Instead, they use the path cost to the root and a hop-count mechanism similar to the IP time-to-live (TTL) mechanism.

By using the **spanning-tree mst max-hops** global configuration command, you can configure the maximum hops inside the region and apply it to the IST and all MST instances in that region. The hop count achieves the same result as the message-age information (triggers a reconfiguration). The root switch of the instance always sends a BPDU (or M-record) with a cost of 0 and the hop count set to the maximum value. When a switch receives this BPDU, it decrements the received remaining hop count by one and propagates this value as the remaining hop count in the BPDUs it generates. When the count reaches zero, the switch discards the BPDU and ages the information that is held for the port.

The message-age and maximum-age information in the RSTP portion of the BPDU remain the same throughout the region, and the same values are propagated by the region designated ports at the boundary.



## Boundary Ports

In the Cisco prestandard implementation, a boundary port connects an MST region to a single spanning-tree region running RSTP, to a single spanning-tree region running PVST+ or rapid PVST+, or to another MST region with a different MST configuration. A boundary port also connects to a LAN, the designated device of which is either a single spanning-tree switch or a switch with a different MST configuration.

There is no definition of a boundary port in the IEEE 802.1s standard. The IEEE 802.1Q-2002 standard identifies two kinds of messages that a port can receive:

- internal (coming from the same region)
- external (coming from another region)

When a message is internal, the CIST part is received by the CIST, and each MST instance receives its respective M-record.

When a message is external, it is received only by the CIST. If the CIST role is root or alternate, or if the external BPDU is a topology change, it could have an impact on the MST instances.

An MST region includes both devices and LANs. A segment belongs to the region of its designated port. Therefore, a port in a different region than the designated port for a segment is a boundary port. This definition allows two ports internal to a region to share a segment with a port belonging to a different region, creating the possibility of a port receiving both internal and external messages.

The primary change from the Cisco prestandard implementation is that a designated port is not defined as boundary, unless it is running in an STP-compatible mode.



---

**Note** If there is a legacy STP device on the segment, messages are always considered external.

---

The other change from the Cisco prestandard implementation is that the CIST regional root device ID field is now inserted where an RSTP or legacy IEEE 802.1Q device has the sender device ID. The whole region performs like a single virtual device by sending a consistent sender device ID to neighboring devices. In this example, Switch C would receive a BPDU with the same consistent sender device ID of root, whether or not A or B is designated for the segment.

## IEEE 802.1s Implementation

The Cisco implementation of the IEEE MST standard includes features required to meet the standard, as well as some of the desirable prestandard functionality that is not yet incorporated into the published standard.

### Port Role Naming Change

The boundary role is no longer in the final MST standard, but this boundary concept is maintained in Cisco's implementation. However, an MST instance port at a boundary of the region might not follow the state of the corresponding CIST port. Two boundary roles currently exist:

- The boundary port is the root port of the CIST regional root—When the CIST instance port is proposed and is in sync, it can send back an agreement and move to the forwarding state only after all the corresponding MSTI ports are in sync (and thus forwarding). The MSTI ports now have a special *primary* role.

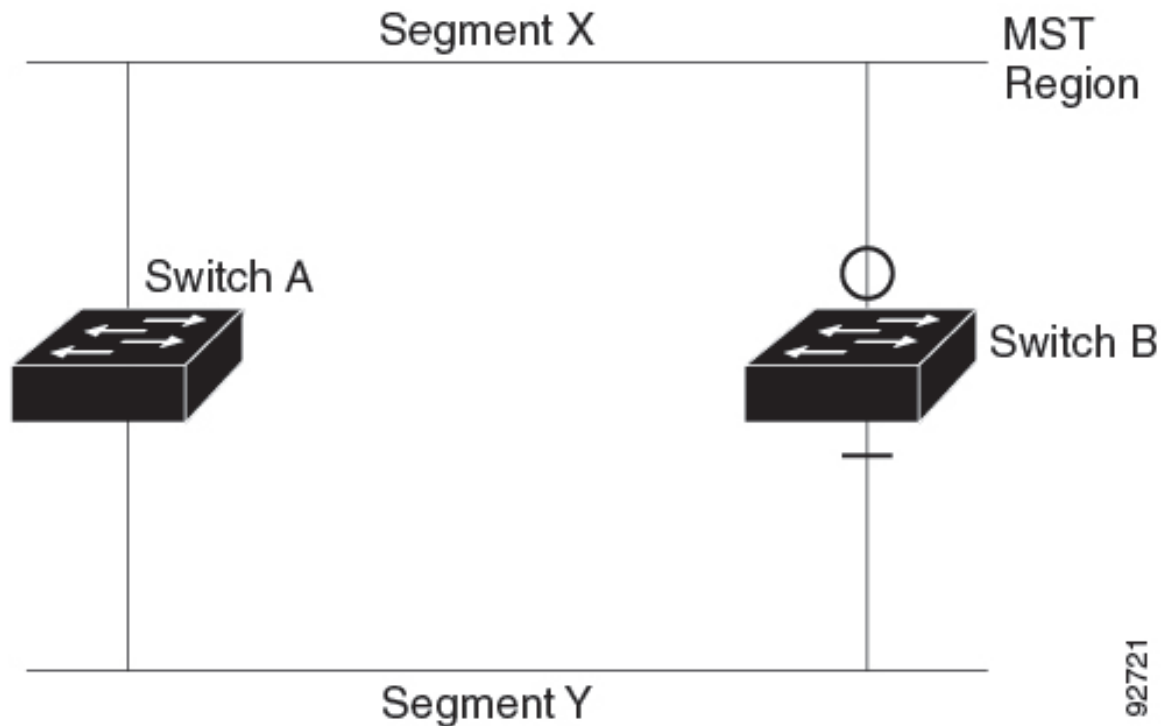
- The boundary port is not the root port of the CIST regional root—The MSTI ports follow the state and role of the CIST port. The standard provides less information, and it might be difficult to understand why an MSTI port can be alternately blocking when it receives no BPDUs (MRecords). In this case, although the boundary role no longer exists, the **show** commands identify a port as boundary in the *type* column of the output.

## Interoperation Between Legacy and Standard Devices

Because automatic detection of prestandard devices can fail, you can use an interface configuration command to identify prestandard ports. A region cannot be formed between a standard and a prestandard device, but they can interoperate by using the CIST. Only the capability of load-balancing over different instances is lost in that particular case. The CLI displays different flags depending on the port configuration when a port receives prestandard BPDUs. A syslog message also appears the first time a device receives a prestandard BPDU on a port that has not been configured for prestandard BPDU transmission.

**Figure 5: Standard and Prestandard Device Interoperation**

Assume that A is a standard switch and B a prestandard switch, both configured to be in the same region. A is the root switch for the CIST, and B has a root port (BX) on segment X and an alternate port (BY) on segment Y. If segment Y flaps, and the port on BY becomes the alternate before sending out a single prestandard BPDU, AY cannot detect that a prestandard switch is connected to Y and continues to send standard BPDUs. The port BY is fixed in a boundary, and no load balancing is possible between A and B. The same problem exists on segment X, but B might transmit topology changes.



**Note** We recommend that you minimize the interaction between standard and prestandard MST implementations.

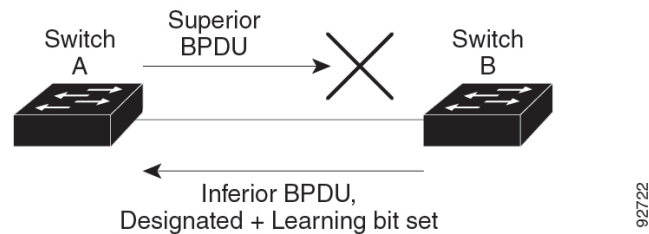
## Detecting Unidirectional Link Failure

This feature is not yet present in the IEEE MST standard, but it is included in this Cisco IOS release. The software checks the consistency of the port role and state in the received BPDUs to detect unidirectional link failures that could cause bridging loops.

When a designated port detects a conflict, it keeps its role, but reverts to the discarding state because disrupting connectivity in case of inconsistency is preferable to opening a bridging loop.

**Figure 6: Detecting Unidirectional Link Failure**

This figure illustrates a unidirectional link failure that typically creates a bridging loop. Switch A is the root device, and its BPDUs are lost on the link leading to Switch B. RSTP and MST BPDUs include the role and state of the sending port. With this information, Switch A can detect that Switch B does not react to the superior BPDUs it sends and that Switch B is the designated, not root switch. As a result, Switch A blocks (or keeps blocking) its port, which prevents the bridging loop.



## Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol and Switch Stacks

A switch stack appears as a single spanning-tree node to the rest of the network, and all stack members use the same bridge ID for a given spanning tree. The bridge ID is derived from the MAC address of the device.

The active switch is the stack root when the stack is the root of the network and no root selection has been made within the stack.

If the switch stack is the spanning-tree root and the active switch fails or leaves the stack, the standby switch becomes the new active switch, bridge IDs remain the same, and a spanning-tree reconvergence might occur.

If a device that does not support MSTP is added to a switch stack that does support MSTP or the reverse, the device is put into a version mismatch state. If possible, the device is automatically upgraded or downgraded to the same version of software that is running on the switch stack.

## Interoperability with IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol

A device running MSTP supports a built-in protocol migration mechanism that enables it to interoperate with legacy IEEE 802.1D devices. If this device receives a legacy IEEE 802.1D configuration BPDU (a BPDU with the protocol version set to 0), it sends only IEEE 802.1D BPDUs on that port. An MSTP device also can detect that a port is at the boundary of a region when it receives a legacy BPDU, an MSTP BPDU (Version 3) associated with a different region, or an RSTP BPDU (Version 2).

However, the device does not automatically revert to the MSTP mode if it no longer receives IEEE 802.1D BPDUs because it cannot detect whether the legacy switch has been removed from the link unless the legacy switch is the designated device. A device might also continue to assign a boundary role to a port when the device to which this device is connected has joined the region. To restart the protocol migration process (force the renegotiation with neighboring devices), use the **clear spanning-tree detected-protocols** privileged EXEC command.

If all the legacy switches on the link are RSTP devices, they can process MSTP BPDUs as if they are RSTP BPDUs. Therefore, MSTP devices send either a Version 0 configuration and TCN BPDUs or Version 3 MSTP BPDUs on a boundary port. A boundary port connects to a LAN, the designated device of which is either a single spanning-tree switch or a switch with a different MST configuration.

## Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Overview

The RSTP takes advantage of point-to-point wiring and provides rapid convergence of the spanning tree. Reconfiguration of the spanning tree can occur in less than 1 second (in contrast to 50 seconds with the default settings in the IEEE 802.1D spanning tree).

### Port Roles and the Active Topology

The RSTP provides rapid convergence of the spanning tree by assigning port roles and by learning the active topology. The RSTP builds upon the IEEE 802.1D STP to select the device with the highest device priority (lowest numerical priority value) as the root device. The RSTP then assigns one of these port roles to individual ports:

- **Root port**—Provides the best path (lowest cost) when the device forwards packets to the root switch.
- **Designated port**—Connects to the designated device, which incurs the lowest path cost when forwarding packets from that LAN to the root switch. The port through which the designated device is attached to the LAN is called the designated port.
- **Alternate port**—Offers an alternate path toward the root switch to that provided by the current root port.
- **Backup port**—Acts as a backup for the path that is provided by a designated port toward the leaves of the spanning tree. A backup port can exist only when two ports are connected in a loopback by a point-to-point link or when a device has two or more connections to a shared LAN segment.
- **Disabled port**—Has no role within the operation of the spanning tree.

A port with the root or a designated port role is included in the active topology. A port with the alternate or backup port role is excluded from the active topology.

In a stable topology with consistent port roles throughout the network, the RSTP ensures that every root port and designated port immediately transition to the forwarding state while all alternate and backup ports are always in the discarding state (equivalent to blocking in IEEE 802.1D). The port state controls the operation of the forwarding and learning processes.

**Table 6: Port State Comparison**

Operational Status	STP Port State (IEEE 802.1D)	RSTP Port State	Is Port Included in the Active Topology?
Enabled	Blocking	Discarding	No
Enabled	Listening	Discarding	No
Enabled	Learning	Learning	Yes
Enabled	Forwarding	Forwarding	Yes
Disabled	Disabled	Discarding	No

To be consistent with Cisco STP implementations, this guide defines the port state as *blocking* instead of *discarding*. Designated ports start in the listening state.

## Rapid Convergence

The RSTP provides for rapid recovery of connectivity following the failure of a device, a device port, or a LAN. It provides rapid convergence for edge ports, new root ports, and ports connected through point-to-point links as follows:

- Edge ports—If you configure a port as an edge port on an RSTP device by using the **spanning-tree portfast** interface configuration command, the edge port immediately transitions to the forwarding state. An edge port is the same as a Port Fast-enabled port, and you should enable it only on ports that connect to a single end station.
- Root ports—If the RSTP selects a new root port, it blocks the old root port and immediately transitions the new root port to the forwarding state.
- Point-to-point links—If you connect a port to another port through a point-to-point link and the local port becomes a designated port, it negotiates a rapid transition with the other port by using the proposal-agreement handshake to ensure a loop-free topology.

### Figure 7: Proposal and Agreement Handshaking for Rapid Convergence

Switch A is connected to Switch B through a point-to-point link, and all of the ports are in the blocking state. Assume that the priority of Switch A is a smaller numerical value than the priority of Switch B. Switch A sends a proposal message (a configuration BPDU with the proposal flag set) to Switch B, proposing itself as the designated device.

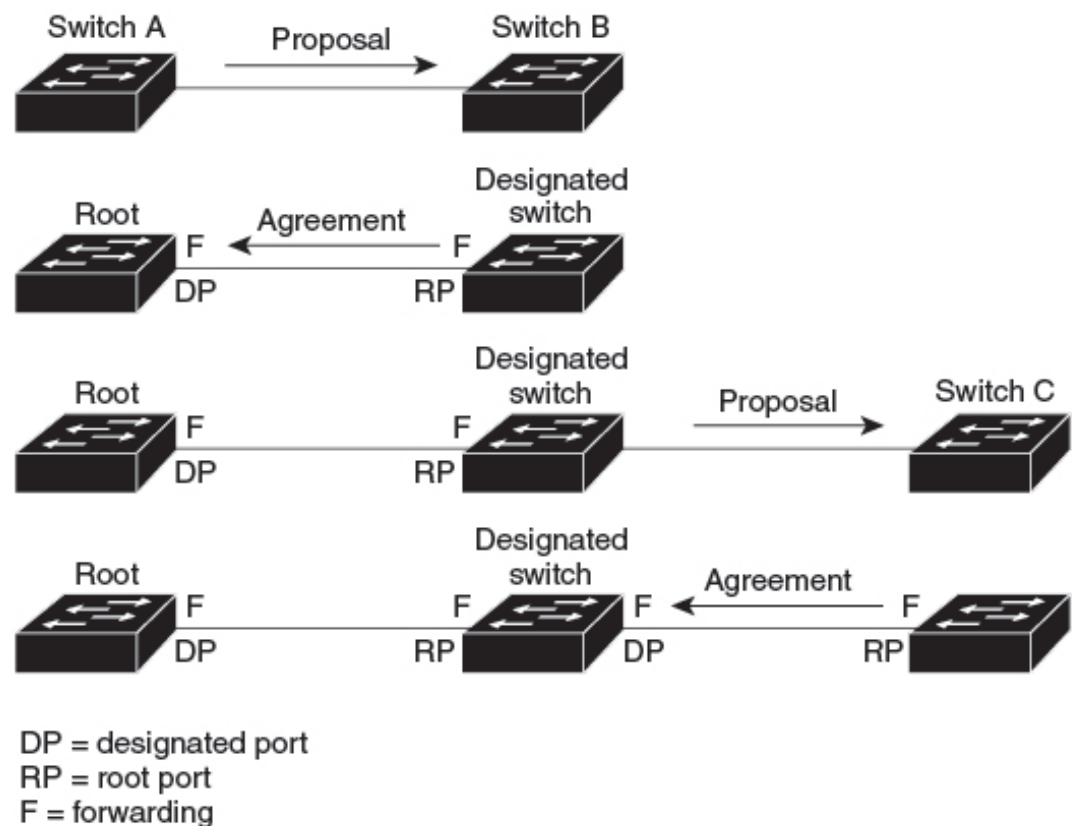
After receiving the proposal message, Switch B selects as its new root port the port from which the proposal message was received, forces all nonedge ports to the blocking state, and sends an agreement message (a BPDU with the agreement flag set) through its new root port.

After receiving Switch B's agreement message, Switch A also immediately transitions its designated port to the forwarding state. No loops in the network are formed because Switch B blocked all of its nonedge ports and because there is a point-to-point link between Switch A and B.

When Switch C is connected to Switch B, a similar set of handshaking messages are exchanged. Switch C selects the port connected to Switch B as its root port, and both ends immediately transition to the forwarding state. With each iteration of this handshaking process, one more device joins the active topology. As the network converges, this proposal-agreement handshaking progresses from the root toward the leaves of the spanning tree.

In a switch stack, the cross-stack rapid transition (CSRT) feature ensures that a stack member receives acknowledgments from all stack members during the proposal-agreement handshaking before moving the port to the forwarding state. CSRT is automatically enabled when the device is in MST mode.

The device learns the link type from the port duplex mode: a full-duplex port is considered to have a point-to-point connection; a half-duplex port is considered to have a shared connection. You can override the default setting that is controlled by the duplex setting by using the **spanning-tree link-type** interface configuration command.



88760

## Synchronization of Port Roles

When the device receives a proposal message on one of its ports and that port is selected as the new root port, the RSTP forces all other ports to synchronize with the new root information.

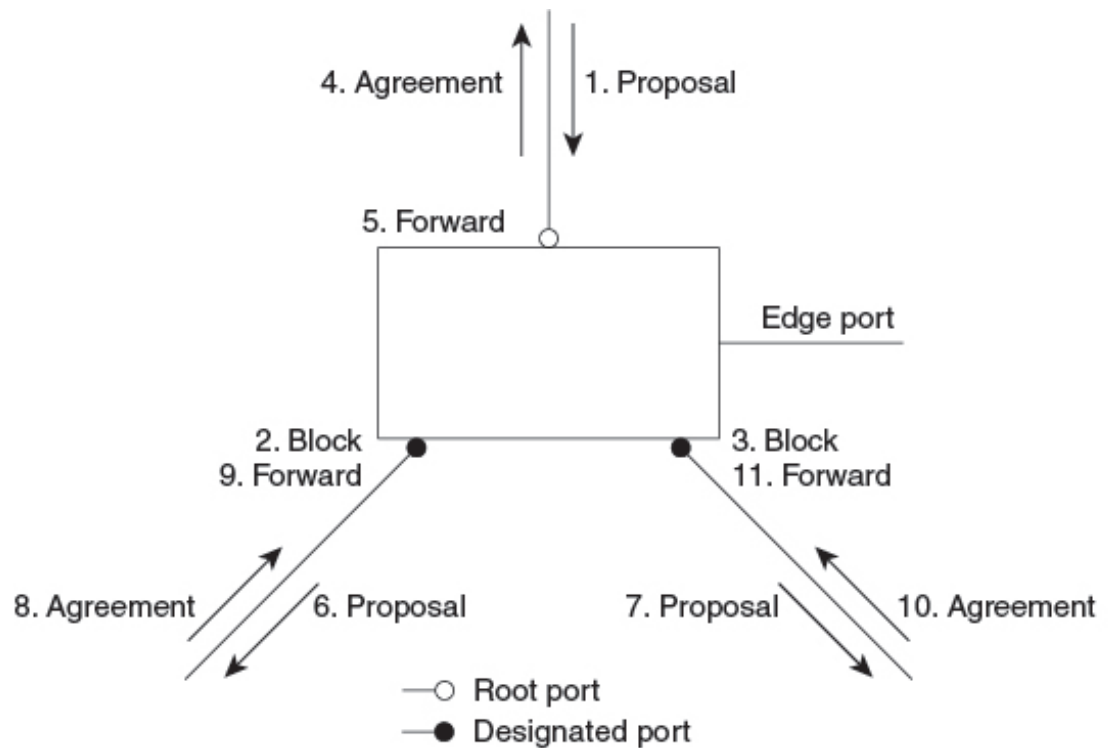
The device is synchronized with superior root information that is received on the root port if all other ports are synchronized. An individual port on the device is synchronized if:

- That port is in the blocking state.
- It is an edge port (a port that is configured to be at the edge of the network).

If a designated port is in the forwarding state and is not configured as an edge port, it transitions to the blocking state when the RSTP forces it to synchronize with new root information. In general, when the RSTP forces a port to synchronize with root information and the port does not satisfy any of the above conditions, its port state is set to blocking.

**Figure 8: Sequence of Events During Rapid Convergence**

After ensuring that all of the ports are synchronized, the device sends an agreement message to the designated device corresponding to its root port. When the devices that are connected by a point-to-point link are in agreement about their port roles, the RSTP immediately transitions the port states to forwarding.



## Bridge Protocol Data Unit Format and Processing

The RSTP BPDUs format is the same as the IEEE 802.1D BPDUs format except that the protocol version is set to 2. A new 1-byte Version 1 Length field is set to zero, which means that no version 1 protocol information is present.

**Table 7: RSTP BPDUs Flags**

Bit	Function
0	Topology change (TC)
1	Proposal
2–3:	Port role:
00	Unknown
01	Alternate port
10	Root port
11	Designated port
4	Learning
5	Forwarding
6	Agreement
7	Topology change acknowledgement (TCA)

The sending device sets the proposal flag in the RSTP BPDU to propose itself as the designated device on that LAN. The port role in the proposal message is always set to the designated port.

The sending device sets the agreement flag in the RSTP BPDU to accept the previous proposal. The port role in the agreement message is always set to the root port.

The RSTP does not have a separate topology change notification (TCN) BPDU. It uses the topology change (TC) flag to show the topology changes. However, for interoperability with IEEE 802.1D devices, the RSTP device processes and generates TCN BPDUs.

The learning and forwarding flags are set according to the state of the sending port.

### Processing Superior Bridge Protocol Data Unit Information

If a port receives superior root information (lower device ID, lower path cost, and so forth) than currently stored for the port, the RSTP triggers a reconfiguration. If the port is proposed and is selected as the new root port, RSTP forces all the other ports to synchronize.

If the BPDU received is an RSTP BPDU with the proposal flag set, the device sends an agreement message after all of the other ports are synchronized. If the BPDU is an IEEE 802.1D BPDU, the device does not set the proposal flag and starts the forward-delay timer for the port. The new root port requires twice the forward-delay time to transition to the forwarding state.

If the superior information that is received on the port causes the port to become a backup or alternate port, RSTP sets the port to the blocking state but does not send the agreement message. The designated port continues sending BPDUs with the proposal flag set until the forward-delay timer expires, at which time the port transitions to the forwarding state.

### Processing Inferior Bridge Protocol Data Unit Information

If a designated port receives an inferior BPDU (such as a higher device ID or a higher path cost than currently stored for the port) with a designated port role, it immediately replies with its own information.

## Topology Changes

This section describes the differences between the RSTP and the IEEE 802.1D in handling spanning-tree topology changes.

- **Detection**—Unlike IEEE 802.1D in which *any* transition between the blocking and the forwarding state causes a topology change, *only* transitions from the blocking to the forwarding state cause a topology change with RSTP (only an increase in connectivity is considered a topology change). State changes on an edge port do not cause a topology change. When an RSTP device detects a topology change, it deletes the learned information on all of its nonedge ports except on those from which it received the TC notification.
- **Notification**—Unlike IEEE 802.1D, which uses TCN BPDUs, the RSTP does not use them. However, for IEEE 802.1D interoperability, an RSTP device processes and generates TCN BPDUs.
- **Acknowledgement**—When an RSTP device receives a TCN message on a designated port from an IEEE 802.1D device, it replies with an IEEE 802.1D configuration BPDU with the TCA bit set. However, if the TC-while timer (the same as the topology-change timer in IEEE 802.1D) is active on a root port that is connected to an IEEE 802.1D device and a configuration BPDU with the TCA bit set is received, the TC-while timer is reset.

This behavior is only required to support IEEE 802.1D devices. The RSTP BPDUs never have the TCA bit set.



- **Propagation**—When an RSTP device receives a TC message from another device through a designated or root port, it propagates the change to all of its nonedge, designated ports and to the root port (excluding the port on which it is received). The device starts the TC-while timer for all such ports and flushes the information learned on them.
- **Protocol migration**—For backward compatibility with IEEE 802.1D devices, RSTP selectively sends IEEE 802.1D configuration BPDUs and TCN BPDUs on a per-port basis.

When a port is initialized, the migrate-delay timer is started (specifies the minimum time during which RSTP BPDUs are sent), and RSTP BPDUs are sent. While this timer is active, the device processes all BPDUs received on that port and ignores the protocol type.

If the device receives an IEEE 802.1D BPDU after the port migration-delay timer has expired, it assumes that it is connected to an IEEE 802.1D device and starts using only IEEE 802.1D BPDUs. However, if the RSTP device is using IEEE 802.1D BPDUs on a port and receives an RSTP BPDU after the timer has expired, it restarts the timer and starts using RSTP BPDUs on that port.

## Protocol Migration Process

A device running MSTP supports a built-in protocol migration mechanism that enables it to interoperate with legacy IEEE 802.1D devices. If this device receives a legacy IEEE 802.1D configuration BPDU (a BPDU with the protocol version set to 0), it sends only IEEE 802.1D BPDUs on that port. An MSTP device also can detect that a port is at the boundary of a region when it receives a legacy BPDU, an MST BPDU (Version 3) associated with a different region, or an RST BPDU (Version 2).

However, the device does not automatically revert to the MSTP mode if it no longer receives IEEE 802.1D BPDUs because it cannot detect whether the legacy switch has been removed from the link unless the legacy switch is the designated device. A device also might continue to assign a boundary role to a port when the device to which it is connected has joined the region.

## Default Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Configuration

**Table 8: Default MSTP Configuration**

Feature	Default Setting
Spanning-tree mode	
Device priority (configurable on a per-CIST port basis)	32768
Spanning-tree port priority (configurable on a per-CIST port basis)	128
Spanning-tree port cost (configurable on a per-CIST port basis)	
Hello time	
Forward-delay time	
Maximum-aging time	20 seconds
Maximum hop count	20 hops

# How to Configure MSTP and MSTP Parameters

The following sections provide information about configuring MSTP and MSTP parameters:

## Specifying the Multiple Spanning Tree Region Configuration and Enabling Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

For two or more switches to be in the same MST region, they must have the same VLAN-to-instance mapping, the same configuration revision number, and the same name.

A region can have one member or multiple members with the same MST configuration; each member must be capable of processing RSTP BPDUs. There is no limit to the number of MST regions in a network, but each region can only support up to 64 spanning-tree instances. You can assign a VLAN to only one spanning-tree instance at a time.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst configuration</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst configuration</b>	Enters MST configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>instance <i>instance-id</i> vlan <i>vlan-range</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-mst)# <b>instance 1 vlan 10-20</b>	Maps VLANs to an MST instance.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>instance-id</i>, the range is 0 to 4094.</li> <li>For <b>vlan <i>vlan-range</i></b>, the range is 1 to 4094.</li> </ul> <p>When you map VLANs to an MST instance, the mapping is incremental, and the VLANs specified in the command are added to or removed from the VLANs that were previously mapped.</p> <p>To specify a VLAN range, use a hyphen; for example, <b>instance 1 vlan 1-63</b> maps VLANs 1 through 63 to MST instance 1.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		To specify a VLAN series, use a comma; for example, <b>instance 1 vlan 10, 20, 30</b> maps VLANs 10, 20, and 30 to MST instance 1.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>name</b> <i>name</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-mst) # <b>name region1</b>	Specifies the configuration name. The <i>name</i> string has a maximum length of 32 characters and is case sensitive.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>revision</b> <i>version</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-mst) # <b>revision 1</b>	Specifies the configuration revision number. The range is 0 to 65535.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show pending</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-mst) # <b>show pending</b>	Verifies your configuration by displaying the pending configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-mst) # <b>exit</b>	Applies all changes, and returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>spanning-tree mode mst</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>spanning-tree mode mst</b>	Enables MSTP. RSTP is also enabled.  Changing spanning-tree modes can disrupt traffic because all spanning-tree instances are stopped for the previous mode and restarted in the new mode.  You cannot run both MSTP and PVST+ or both MSTP and Rapid PVST+ at the same time.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring the Root Device

To configure the root device, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

- An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.
- You must also know the specified MST instance ID.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> root primary</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst 0 root primary</b>	Configures a device as the root device. For <i>instance-id</i> , you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is 0 to 4094.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring a Secondary Root Device

When you configure a device with the extended system ID support as the secondary root, the device priority is modified from the default value (32768) to 28672. The device is then likely to become the root device for the specified instance if the primary root device fails. This is assuming that the other network devices use the default device priority of 32768 and therefore are unlikely to become the root device.

You can execute this command on more than one device to configure multiple backup root devices. Use the same network diameter and hello-time values that you used when you configured the primary root device with the **spanning-tree mst *instance-id* root primary** global configuration command.

To configure a secondary root device, perform this procedure:

**Before you begin**

- An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.
- You must also know the specified MST instance ID.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> root secondary</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst 0 root secondary</b>	Configures a device as the secondary root device.  For <i>instance-id</i> , you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is 0 to 4094.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring Port Priority

If a loop occurs, the MSTP uses the port priority when selecting an interface to put into the forwarding state. You can assign higher priority values (lower numerical values) to interfaces that you want selected first and lower priority values (higher numerical values) that you want selected last. If all interfaces have the same priority value, the MSTP puts the interface with the lowest interface number in the forwarding state and blocks the other interfaces.



**Note** If the device is a member of a switch stack, you must use the **spanning-tree mst [*instance-id*] cost *cost*** interface configuration command instead of the **spanning-tree mst [*instance-id*] port-priority *priority*** interface configuration command to select a port to put in the forwarding state. Assign lower cost values to ports that you want selected first and higher cost values to ports that you want selected last.

To configure port priority, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

- An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.
- You must also know the specified MST instance ID and the interface used.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.

## (Optional) Configuring Path Cost

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config) # <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst instance-id port-priority priority</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if) # <b>spanning-tree mst 0 port-priority 64</b>	Configures port priority. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is 0 to 4094.</li> <li>For <i>priority</i>, the range is 0 to 240 in increments of 16. The default is 128. The lower the number, the higher the priority.</li> </ul> <p>The priority values are 0, 16, 32, 48, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160, 176, 192, 208, 224, and 240. All other values are rejected.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

The **show spanning-tree mst interface interface-id** privileged EXEC command displays information only if the port is in a link-up operative state. Otherwise, you can use the **show running-config interface** privileged EXEC command to confirm the configuration.

## (Optional) Configuring Path Cost

The MSTP path cost default value is derived from the media speed of an interface. If a loop occurs, the MSTP uses cost when selecting an interface to put in the forwarding state. You can assign lower cost values to interfaces that you want selected first and higher cost values that you want selected last. If all interfaces have the same cost value, the MSTP puts the interface with the lowest interface number in the forwarding state and blocks the other interfaces.

To configure path cost, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

- An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.
- You must also know the specified MST instance ID and the interface used.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. Valid interfaces include physical ports and port-channel logical interfaces. The port-channel range is 1 to 48.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst instance-id cost cost</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree mst 0 cost 17031970</b>	Configures the cost.  If a loop occurs, the MSTP uses the path cost when selecting an interface to place into the forwarding state. A lower path cost represents higher-speed transmission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is 0 to 4094.</li> <li>• For <i>cost</i>, the range is 1 to 200000000; the default value is derived from the media speed of the interface.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

The **show spanning-tree mst interface interface-id** privileged EXEC command displays information only for ports that are in a link-up operative state. Otherwise, you can use the **show running-config** privileged EXEC command to confirm the configuration.

## (Optional) Configuring the Device Priority

Changing the priority of a device makes it more likely to be chosen as the root switch whether it is a standalone switch or a switch in the stack.



**Note** Exercise care when using this command. For normal network configurations, we recommend that you use the **spanning-tree mst *instance-id* root primary** and the **spanning-tree mst *instance-id* root secondary** global configuration commands to specify a device as the root or secondary root device. You should modify the device priority only in circumstances where these commands do not work.

To configure the device priority, perform this procedure:

#### Before you begin

- An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.
- You must also know the specified MST instance ID used.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> priority <i>priority</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst 0 priority 40960</b>	Configures the device priority. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is 0 to 4094.</li> <li>• For <i>priority</i>, the range is 0 to 61440 in increments of 4096; the default is 32768. The lower the number, the more likely the device will be chosen as the root switch.</li> </ul> <p>Priority values are 0, 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344, and 61440. These are the only acceptable values.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



## (Optional) Configuring the Hello Time

The hello time is the time interval between configuration messages that are generated and sent by the root device.

To configure the hello time, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst hello-time <i>seconds</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst hello-time 4</b>	Configures the hello time for all MST instances. The hello time is the time interval between configuration messages that are generated and sent by the root device. These messages indicate that the device is alive. For <i>seconds</i> , the range is 1 to 10; the default is 3.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time

To configure the forwarding-delay time, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device> <b>enable</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst forward-time <i>seconds</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst forward-time 25</b>	Configures the forward time for all MST instances. The forwarding delay is the number of seconds a port waits before changing from its spanning-tree learning and listening states to the forwarding state.  For <i>seconds</i> , the range is 4 to 30; the default is 20.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time

To configure the maximum-aging time, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst max-age <i>seconds</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst max-age 40</b>	Configures the maximum-aging time for all MST instances. The maximum-aging time is the number of seconds a device waits without receiving spanning-tree configuration messages before attempting a reconfiguration.  For <i>seconds</i> , the range is 6 to 40; the default is 20.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring the Maximum-Hop Count

To configure the maximum-hop count, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst max-hops <i>hop-count</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>spanning-tree mst max-hops 25</b>	Specifies the number of hops in a region before the BPDU is discarded, and the information that is held for a port is aged.  For <i>hop-count</i> , the range is 1 to 255; the default is 20.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Specifying the Link Type to Ensure Rapid Transitions

If you connect a port to another port through a point-to-point link and the local port becomes a designated port, the RSTP negotiates a rapid transition with the other port by using the proposal-agreement handshake to ensure a loop-free topology.

By default, the link type is controlled from the duplex mode of the interface: a full-duplex port is considered to have a point-to-point connection; a half-duplex port is considered to have a shared connection. If you have a half-duplex link physically connected point-to-point to a single port on a remote device running MSTP, you can override the default setting of the link type and enable rapid transitions to the forwarding state.

To specify the link type to ensure rapid transitions, perform this procedure:

**(Optional) Designating the Neighbor Type****Before you begin**

- An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.
- You must also know the specified MST instance ID and the interface used.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. Valid interfaces include physical ports, VLANs, and port-channel logical interfaces. The VLAN ID range is 1 to 4094. The port-channel range is 1 to 48.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree link-type point-to-point</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree link-type point-to-point</b>	Specifies that the link type of a port is point-to-point.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**(Optional) Designating the Neighbor Type**

A topology could contain both prestandard and IEEE 802.1s standard compliant devices. By default, ports can automatically detect prestandard devices, but they can still receive both standard and prestandard BPDUs. When there is a mismatch between a device and its neighbor, only the CIST runs on the interface.

You can choose to set a port to send only prestandard BPDUs. The prestandard flag appears in all the **show** commands, even if the port is in STP compatibility mode.

To designate the neighbor type, perform this procedure:

**Before you begin**

An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. Valid interfaces include physical ports.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree mst pre-standard</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree mst pre-standard</b>	Specifies that the port can send only prestandard BPDUs.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Restarting the Protocol Migration Process

This procedure restarts the protocol migration process and forces renegotiation with neighboring devices. It reverts the device to MST mode. It is needed when the device no longer receives IEEE 802.1D BPDUs after it has been receiving them.

Follow these steps to restart the protocol migration process (force the renegotiation with neighboring devices) on the device.

**Before you begin**

- An MST must be specified and enabled on the device.
- If you want to use the interface version of the command, you must also know the MST interface used.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<p>Enter one of the following commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>clear spanning-tree detected-protocols</b></li> <li><b>clear spanning-tree detected-protocols interface <i>interface-id</i></b></li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# clear spanning-tree detected-protocols</pre> <p>or</p> <pre>Device# clear spanning-tree detected-protocols interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	The device reverts to the MSTP mode, and the protocol migration process restarts.

**What to do next**

This procedure may need to be repeated if the device receives more legacy IEEE 802.1D configuration BPDUs (BPDUs with the protocol version set to 0).

## Additional References for MSTP

**Related Documents**

Related Topic	Document Title
For complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.	See the Layer 2/3 Commands section of the <i>Command Reference (Catalyst 9600 Series Switches)</i>

## Feature History for MSTP

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	Multiple Spanning-Tree Protocol	MSTP, which uses RSTP for rapid convergence, enables multiple VLANs to be grouped into and mapped to the same spanning-tree instance, reducing the number of spanning-tree instances needed to support a large number of VLANs.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>.



## CHAPTER 3

# Configuring Optional Spanning-Tree Features

- [Information About Optional Spanning-Tree Features, on page 51](#)
- [How to Configure Optional Spanning-Tree Features, on page 64](#)
- [Monitoring the Spanning-Tree Status, on page 79](#)
- [Additional References for Optional Spanning Tree Features, on page 79](#)
- [Feature History for Optional Spanning Tree Features, on page 79](#)

## Information About Optional Spanning-Tree Features

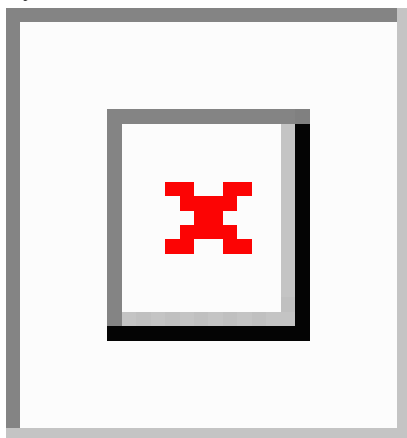
The following sections provide information about Optional Spanning-Tree features:

### PortFast

PortFast immediately brings an interface configured as an access or trunk port to the forwarding state from a blocking state, bypassing the listening and learning states.

**Figure 9: PortFast-Enabled Interfaces**

You can use PortFast on interfaces connected to a single workstation or server to allow those devices to immediately connect to the network, rather than waiting for the spanning tree to



converge.

Interfaces connected to a single workstation or server should not receive bridge protocol data units (BPDUs). An interface with PortFast enabled goes through the normal cycle of spanning-tree status changes when the switch is restarted.

You can enable this feature by enabling it on either the interface or on all nontrunking ports.

## Spanning Tree Protocol PortFast Port Types

You can configure a spanning tree port (STP) as an edge port, a network port, or a normal port. A port can be in only one of these states at a given time. The default spanning tree port type is normal. You can configure the port type either globally or per interface.

Depending on the type of device to which the interface is connected, you can configure a spanning tree port as one of these port types:

- A PortFast edge port: It is connected to a Layer 2 host. This can be either an access port or an edge trunk port (**portfast edge trunk**). This type of port interface immediately transitions to the forwarding state, bypassing the listening and learning states. Use PortFast edge on Layer 2 access ports connected to a single workstation or server to allow those devices to connect to the network immediately, rather than waiting for spanning tree to converge.

Even if the interface receives a bridge protocol data unit (BPDU), spanning tree does not place the port into the blocking state. Spanning tree sets the operating state of the port to nonport fast even if the configured state remains port fast edge and starts participating in the topology change.




---

**Note** If you configure a port connected to a Layer 2 switch or bridge as an edge port, you might create a bridging loop.

---

- A PortFast network port: It is connected only to a Layer 2 switch or bridge.

Bridge Assurance is enabled only on PortFast network ports. For more information, see [#unique\\_90](#).




---

**Note** If you configure a port that is connected to a Layer 2 host as a spanning tree network port, the port automatically moves into the blocking state.

---

- A PortFast normal port: It is the default type of spanning tree port.




---

**Note** If you enter the **spanning-tree portfast trunk** command in the global or interface configuration mode, the system automatically saves it as **spanning-tree portfast edge trunk**.

---

## Bridge Protocol Data Unit Guard

The Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) guard feature can be globally enabled on the switch or can be enabled per port, but the feature operates with some differences.

When you enable BPDU guard at the global level on PortFast edge-enabled ports, spanning tree shuts down ports that are in a PortFast edge-operational state if any BPDU is received on them. In a valid configuration, PortFast edge-enabled ports do not receive BPDUs. Receiving a BPDU on a PortFast edge-enabled port means an invalid configuration, such as the connection of an unauthorized device, and the BPDU guard feature puts



the port in the error-disabled state. When this happens, the switch shuts down the entire port on which the violation occurred.

When you enable BPDU guard at the interface level on any port without also enabling the PortFast edge feature, and the port receives a BPDU, it is put in the error-disabled state.

The BPDU guard feature provides a secure response to invalid configurations because you must manually put the interface back in service. Use the BPDU guard feature in a service-provider network to prevent an access port from participating in the spanning tree.

## Bridge Protocol Data Unit Filtering

The BPDU filtering feature can be globally enabled on the switch or can be enabled per interface, but the feature operates with some differences.

Enabling BPDU filtering on PortFast edge-enabled interfaces at the global level keeps those interfaces that are in a PortFast edge-operational state from sending or receiving BPDUs. The interfaces still send a few BPDUs at link-up before the switch begins to filter outbound BPDUs. You should globally enable BPDU filtering on a switch so that hosts that are connected to these interfaces do not receive BPDUs. If a BPDU is received on a PortFast edge-enabled interface, the interface loses its PortFast edge-operational status, and BPDU filtering is disabled.

Enabling BPDU filtering on an interface without also enabling the PortFast edge feature keeps the interface from sending or receiving BPDUs.



---

**Caution** Enabling BPDU filtering on an interface is the same as disabling spanning tree on it and can result in spanning-tree loops.

---

You can enable the BPDU filtering feature for the entire switch or for an interface.

## Bridge Assurance

You can use Bridge Assurance to help prevent looping conditions that are caused by unidirectional links (one-way traffic on a link or port), or a malfunction in a neighboring switch. Here, a malfunction refers to a switch that is not able to run STP any more, while still forwarding traffic (a brain dead switch).

BPDUs are sent out on all operational network ports, including alternate and backup ports, for each hello time period. Bridge Assurance monitors the receipt of BPDUs on point-to-point links on all network ports. When a port does not receive BPDUs within the allotted hello time period, the port is put into a blocked state (the same as a port inconsistent state, which stops forwarding of frames). When the port resumes receipt of BPDUs, the port resumes normal spanning tree operations.



---

**Note** Only Rapid PVST+ and MST spanning tree protocols support Bridge Assurance. PVST+ does not support Bridge Assurance.

---

The following example shows how Bridge Assurance protects your network from bridging loops. Here, [Figure 10: Network with Normal STP Topology, on page 54](#) shows a normal STP topology, and [Figure 11: Network Loop Due to a Malfunctioning Switch, on page 54](#) demonstrates a potential network problem when the device fails (brain dead) and Bridge Assurance is not enabled on the network.

**Figure 10: Network with Normal STP Topology****Figure 11: Network Loop Due to a Malfunctioning Switch**

Figure 12: Network with STP Topology Running Bridge Assurance , on page 54 shows the network with Bridge Assurance enabled, and the STP topology progressing normally with bidirectional BDPUs issuing from every STP network port. Figure 13: Network Problem Averted with Bridge Assurance Enabled, on page 54 shows how the potential network problem shown in Figure 11: Network Loop Due to a Malfunctioning Switch , on page 54 does not occur when you have Bridge Assurance enabled on your network.

**Figure 12: Network with STP Topology Running Bridge Assurance****Figure 13: Network Problem Averted with Bridge Assurance Enabled**

The system generates syslog messages when a port is blocked or unblocked. The following sample outputs show the log that is generated for each of these states:

Blocked port:

```
Sep 17 09:48:16.249 PDT: %SPANTREE-2-BRIDGE_ASSURANCE_BLOCK: Bridge Assurance blocking port GigabitEthernet5/8 on VLAN0200. (stack-dut-R4-4)
```

Unblocked Port:

```
Sep 17 09:48:58.426 PDT: %SPANTREE-2-BRIDGE_ASSURANCE_UNBLOCK: Bridge Assurance unblocking port GigabitEthernet5/8 on VLAN0200. (stack-dut-R4-4)
```

## Guidelines for Configuring Bridge Assurance

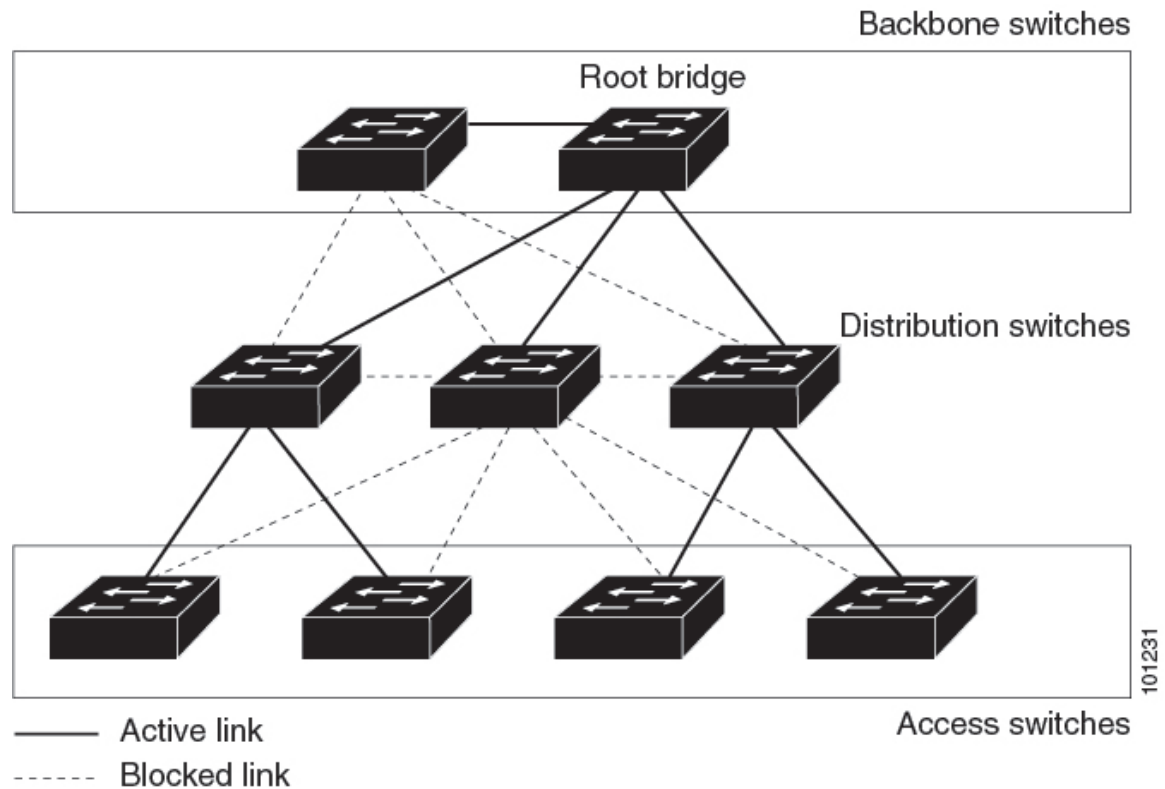
Observe these guidelines when configuring Bridge Assurance:

- Bridge Assurance can be enabled or disabled globally.
- Bridge Assurance applies to all operational network ports, including alternate and backup ports.
- Only Rapid PVST+ and MST spanning tree protocols support Bridge Assurance. PVST+ does not support Bridge Assurance.
- For Bridge Assurance to work properly, it must be supported and configured on both ends of a point-to-point link. If the device on one side of the link has Bridge Assurance enabled and the device on the other side does not, then the connecting port is blocked (a Bridge Assurance inconsistent state). We recommend that you enable Bridge Assurance throughout your network.
- To enable Bridge Assurance on a port, BPDU filtering and BPDU Guard must be disabled.
- You can enable Bridge Assurance along with Loop Guard.
- You can enable Bridge Assurance along with Root Guard. The latter is designed to provide a way to enforce the root bridge placement in the network.

# UplinkFast

**Figure 14: Switches in a Hierarchical Network**

Switches in hierarchical networks can be grouped into backbone switches, distribution switches, and access switches. This complex network has distribution switches and access switches that each have at least one redundant link that spanning tree blocks to prevent loops.



If a switch loses connectivity, it begins using the alternate paths when the spanning tree selects a new root port. You can accelerate the choice of a new root port when a link or switch fails or when the spanning tree reconfigures itself by enabling UplinkFast. The root port transitions to the forwarding state immediately without going through the listening and learning states, as it would with the normal spanning-tree procedures.

When the spanning tree reconfigures the new root port, other interfaces flood the network with multicast packets, one for each address that was learned on the interface. You can limit these bursts of multicast traffic by reducing the max-update-rate parameter (the default for this parameter is 150 packets per second). However, if you enter zero, station-learning frames are not generated, so the spanning-tree topology converges more slowly after a loss of connectivity.



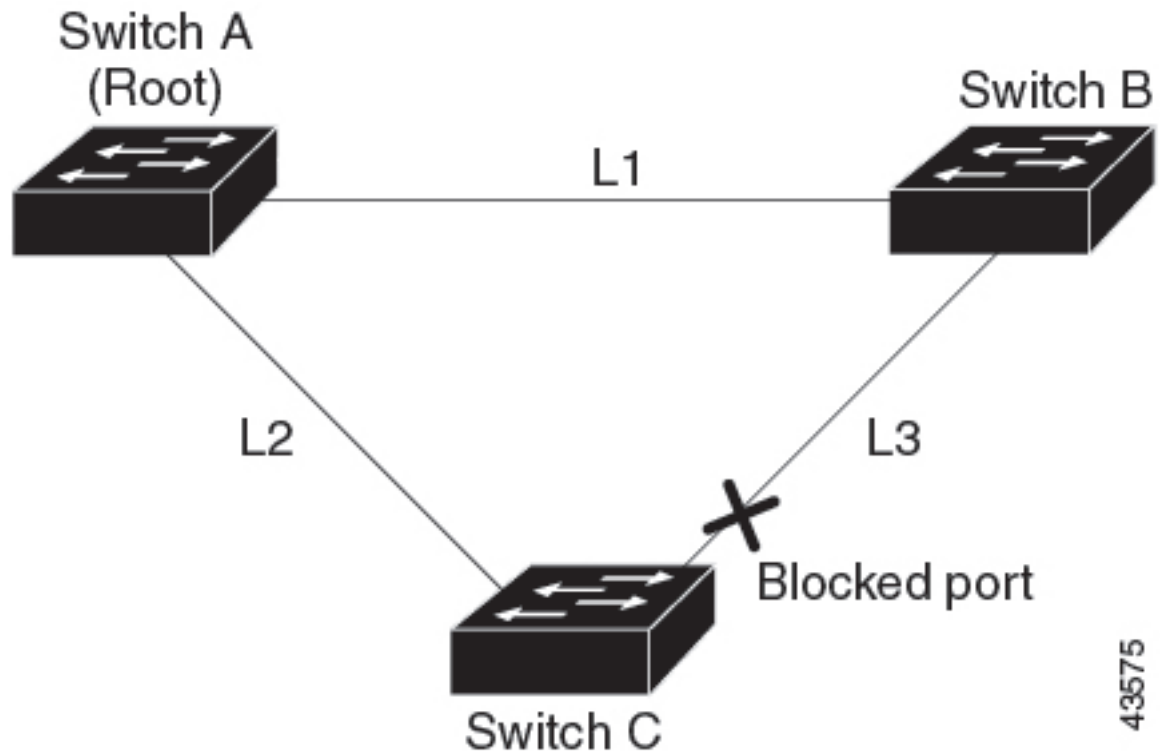
**Note** UplinkFast is most useful in wiring-closet switches at the access or edge of the network. It is not appropriate for backbone devices. This feature might not be useful for other types of applications.

UplinkFast provides fast convergence after a direct link failure and achieves load-balancing between redundant Layer 2 links using uplink groups. An uplink group is a set of Layer 2 interfaces (per VLAN), only one of which is forwarding at any given time. Specifically, an uplink group consists of the root port (which is

forwarding) and a set of blocked ports, except for self-looping ports. The uplink group provides an alternate path in case the currently forwarding link fails.

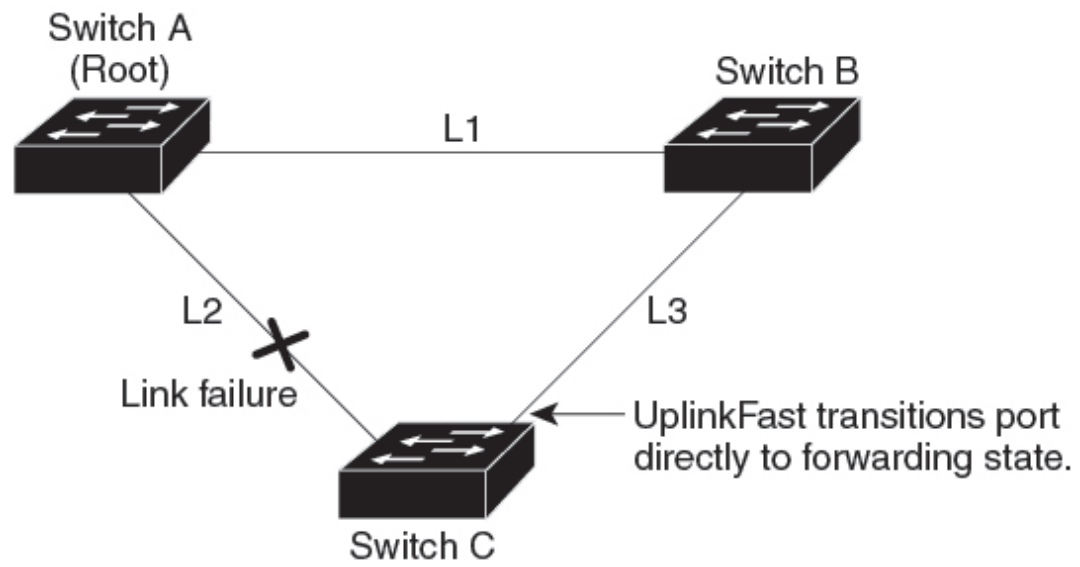
**Figure 15: UplinkFast Example Before Direct Link Failure**

This topology has no link failures. Switch A, the root switch, is connected directly to Switch B over link L1 and to Switch C over link L2. The Layer 2 interface on Switch C that is connected directly to Switch B is in a blocking state.



**Figure 16: UplinkFast Example After Direct Link Failure**

If Switch C detects a link failure on the currently active link L2 on the root port (a direct link failure), UplinkFast unblocks the blocked interface on Switch C and transitions it to the forwarding state without going through the listening and learning states. This change takes approximately 1 to 5 seconds.



43576

## Cross-Stack UplinkFast

Cross-Stack UplinkFast (CSUF) provides a fast spanning-tree transition (fast convergence in less than 1 second under normal network conditions) across a switch stack. During the fast transition, an alternate redundant link on the switch stack is placed in the forwarding state without causing temporary spanning-tree loops or loss of connectivity to the backbone. With this feature, you can have a redundant and resilient network in some configurations. CSUF is automatically enabled when you enable the UplinkFast feature.

CSUF might not provide a fast transition all the time; in these cases, the normal spanning-tree transition occurs, completing in 30 to 40 seconds. For more information, see [Related Topics](#).

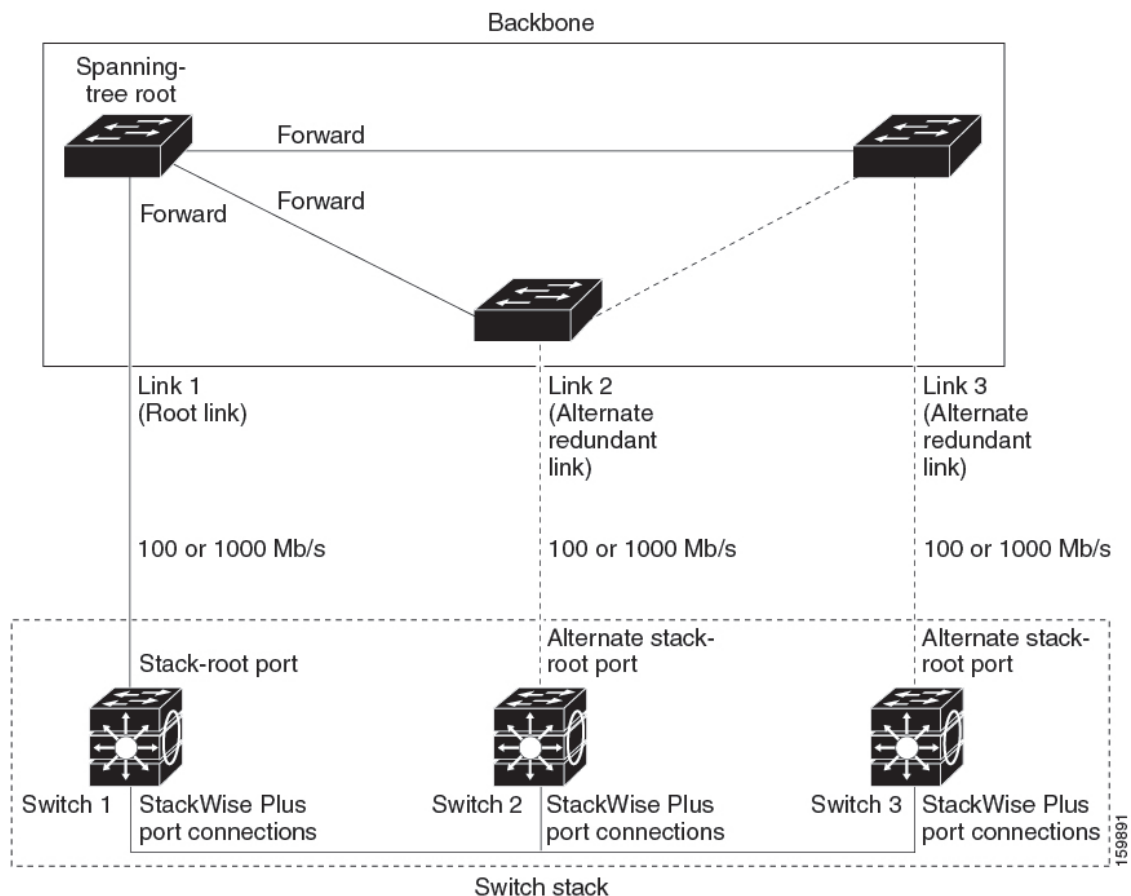
## How Cross-Stack UplinkFast Works

Cross-Stack UplinkFast (CSUF) ensures that one link in the stack is elected as the path to the root.

**Figure 17: Cross-Stack UplinkFast Topology**

The stack-root port on Switch 1 provides the path to the root of the spanning tree. The alternate stack-root ports on Switches 2 and 3 can provide an alternate path to the spanning-tree root if the current stack-root switch fails or if its link to the spanning-tree root fails.

Link 1, the root link, is in the spanning-tree forwarding state. Links 2 and 3 are alternate redundant links that are in the spanning-tree blocking state. If Switch 1 fails, if its stack-root port fails, or if Link 1 fails, CSUF selects either the alternate stack-root port on Switch 2 or Switch 3 and puts it into the forwarding state in less than 1 second.



When certain link loss or spanning-tree events occur (described in the following topic), the Fast Uplink Transition Protocol uses the neighbor list to send fast-transition requests to stack members.

The switch sending the fast-transition request needs to do a fast transition to the forwarding state of a port that it has chosen as the root port, and it must obtain an acknowledgment from each stack switch before performing the fast transition.

Each switch in the stack decides if the sending switch is a better choice than itself to be the stack root of this spanning-tree instance by comparing the root, cost, and bridge ID. If the sending switch is the best choice as the stack root, each switch in the stack returns an acknowledgment; otherwise, it sends a fast-transition request. The sending switch then has not received acknowledgments from all stack switches.

When acknowledgments are received from all stack switches, the Fast Uplink Transition Protocol on the sending switch immediately transitions its alternate stack-root port to the forwarding state. If acknowledgments from all stack switches are not obtained by the sending switch, the normal spanning-tree transitions (blocking, listening, learning, and forwarding) take place, and the spanning-tree topology converges at its normal rate ( $2 * \text{forward-delay time} + \text{max-age time}$ ).

The Fast Uplink Transition Protocol is implemented on a per-VLAN basis and affects only one spanning-tree instance at a time.

## Events That Cause Fast Convergence

Depending on the network event or failure, the CSUF fast convergence might or might not occur.

Fast convergence (less than 1 second under normal network conditions) occurs under these circumstances:

- The stack-root port link fails.

If two switches in the stack have alternate paths to the root, only one of the switches performs the fast transition.

- The failed link, which connects the stack root to the spanning-tree root, recovers.
- A network reconfiguration causes a new stack-root switch to be selected.
- A network reconfiguration causes a new port on the current stack-root switch to be chosen as the stack-root port.



---

**Note** The fast transition might not occur if multiple events occur simultaneously. For example, if a stack member is powered off, and at the same time, the link connecting the stack root to the spanning-tree root comes back up, the normal spanning-tree convergence occurs.

---

Normal spanning-tree convergence (30 to 40 seconds) occurs under these conditions:

- The stack-root switch is powered off, or the software failed.
- The stack-root switch, which was powered off or failed, is powered on.
- A new switch, which might become the stack root, is added to the stack.

## BackboneFast

BackboneFast detects indirect failures in the core of the backbone. BackboneFast is a complementary technology to the UplinkFast feature, which responds to failures on links that are directly connected to access switches. BackboneFast optimizes the maximum-age timer, which controls the amount of time the switch stores protocol information that is received on an interface. When a switch receives an inferior BPDU from the designated port of another switch, the BPDU is a signal that the other switch might have lost its path to the root, and BackboneFast tries to find an alternate path to the root.

BackboneFast starts when a root port or blocked interface on a switch receives inferior BPDUs from its designated switch. An inferior BPDU identifies a switch that declares itself as both the root bridge and the designated switch. When a switch receives an inferior BPDU, it means that a link to which the switch is not directly connected (an indirect link) has failed (that is, the designated switch has lost its connection to the root switch). Under spanning-tree rules, the switch ignores inferior BPDUs for the maximum aging time (default is 20 seconds).

The switch tries to find if it has an alternate path to the root switch. If the inferior BPDU arrives on a blocked interface, the root port and other blocked interfaces on the switch become alternate paths to the root switch. (Self-looped ports are not considered alternate paths to the root switch.) If the inferior BPDU arrives on the root port, all blocked interfaces become alternate paths to the root switch. If the inferior BPDU arrives on the root port and there are no blocked interfaces, the switch assumes that it has lost connectivity to the root switch, causes the maximum aging time on the root port to expire, and becomes the root switch according to normal spanning-tree rules.

If the switch has alternate paths to the root switch, it uses these alternate paths to send a root link query (RLQ) request. The switch sends the RLQ request on all alternate paths to learn if any stack member has an alternate

root to the root switch and waits for an RLQ reply from other switches in the network and in the stack. The switch sends the RLQ request on all alternate paths and waits for an RLQ reply from other switches in the network.

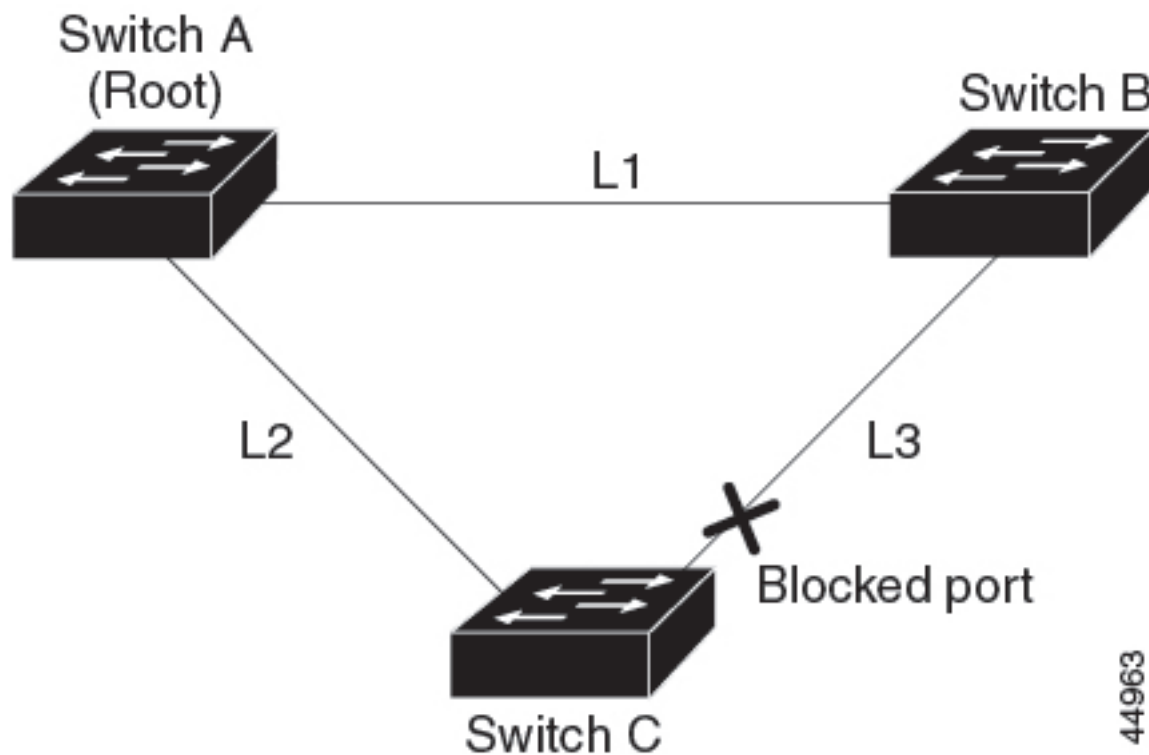
When a stack member receives an RLQ reply from a nonstack member on a blocked interface and the reply is destined for another nonstacked switch, it forwards the reply packet, regardless of the spanning-tree interface state.

When a stack member receives an RLQ reply from a nonstack member and the response is destined for the stack, the stack member forwards the reply so that all the other stack members receive it.

If the switch discovers that it still has an alternate path to the root, it expires the maximum aging time on the interface that received the inferior BPDU. If all the alternate paths to the root switch indicate that the switch has lost connectivity to the root switch, the switch expires the maximum aging time on the interface that received the RLQ reply. If one or more alternate paths can still connect to the root switch, the switch makes all interfaces on which it received an inferior BPDU its designated ports and moves them from the blocking state (if they were in the blocking state), through the listening and learning states, and into the forwarding state.

**Figure 18: BackboneFast Example Before Indirect Link Failure**

This is an example topology with no link failures. Switch A, the root switch, connects directly to Switch B over link L1 and to Switch C over link L2. The Layer 2 interface on Switch C that connects directly to Switch B is in the blocking state.

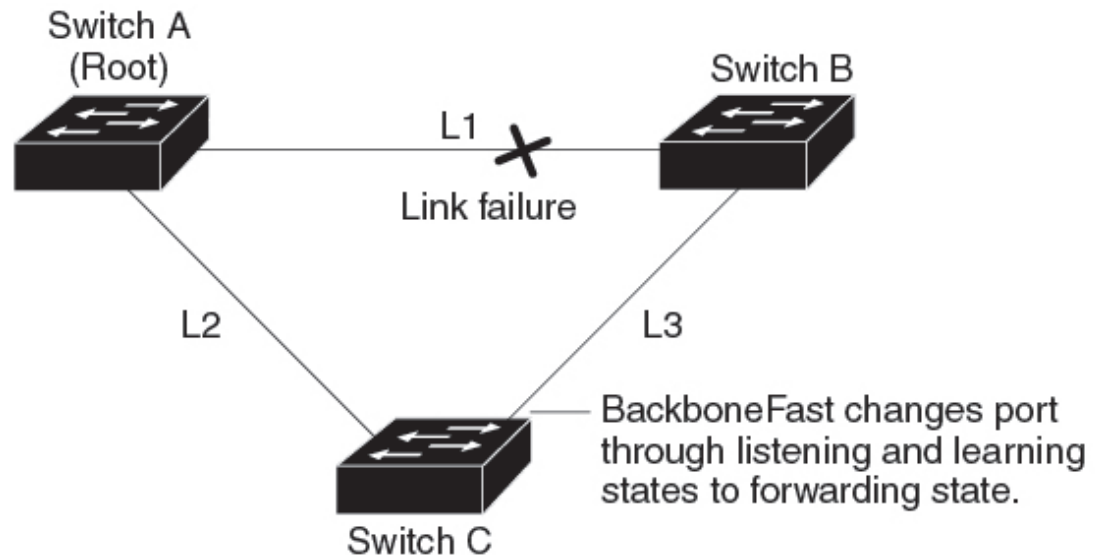


**Figure 19: BackboneFast Example After Indirect Link Failure**

If link L1 fails, Switch C cannot detect this failure because it is not connected directly to link L1. However, because Switch B is directly connected to the root switch over L1, it detects the failure, elects itself the root, and begins sending BPDUs to Switch C, identifying itself as the root. When Switch C receives the inferior

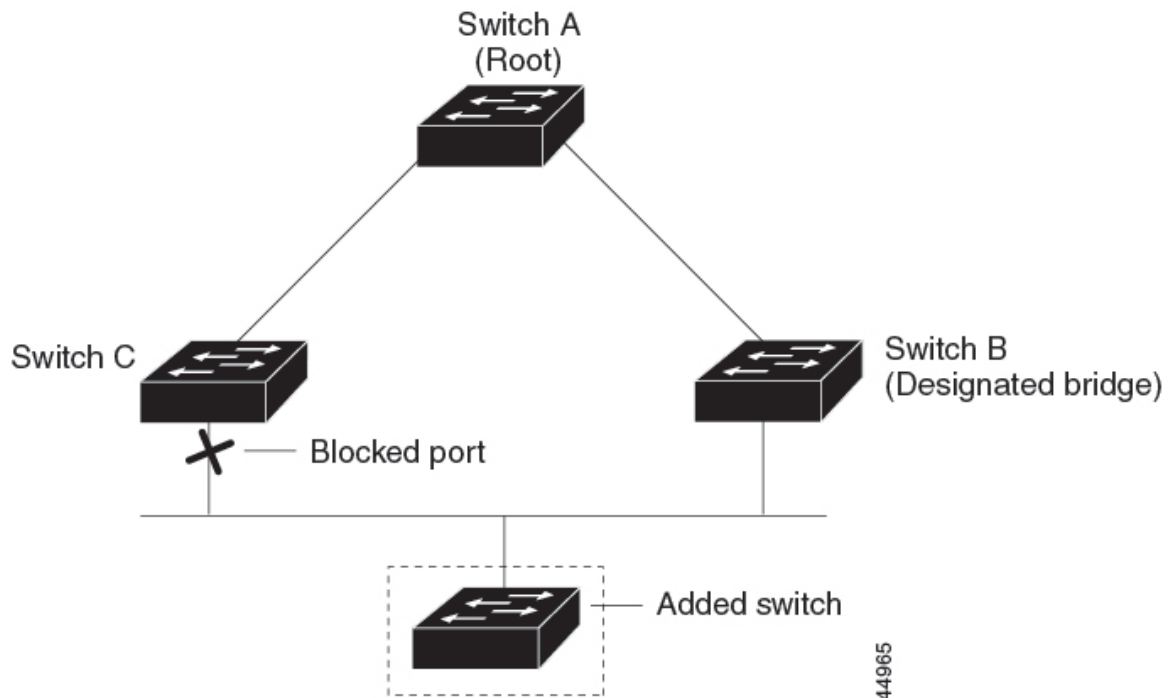


BPDU from Switch B, Switch C assumes that an indirect failure has occurred. At that point, BackboneFast allows the blocked interface on Switch C to move immediately to the listening state without waiting for the maximum aging time for the interface to expire. BackboneFast then transitions the Layer 2 interface on Switch C to the forwarding state, providing a path from Switch B to Switch A. The root-switch election takes approximately 30 seconds, twice the Forward Delay time if the default Forward Delay time of 15 seconds is set. BackboneFast reconfigures the topology to account for the failure of link L1.



**Figure 20: Adding a Switch in a Shared-Medium Topology**

If a new switch is introduced into a shared-medium topology, BackboneFast is not activated because the inferior BPDUs did not come from the recognized designated switch (Switch B). The new switch begins sending inferior BPDUs that indicate it is the root switch. However, the other switches ignore these inferior BPDUs, and the new switch learns that Switch B is the designated switch to Switch A, the root switch.



## EtherChannel Guard

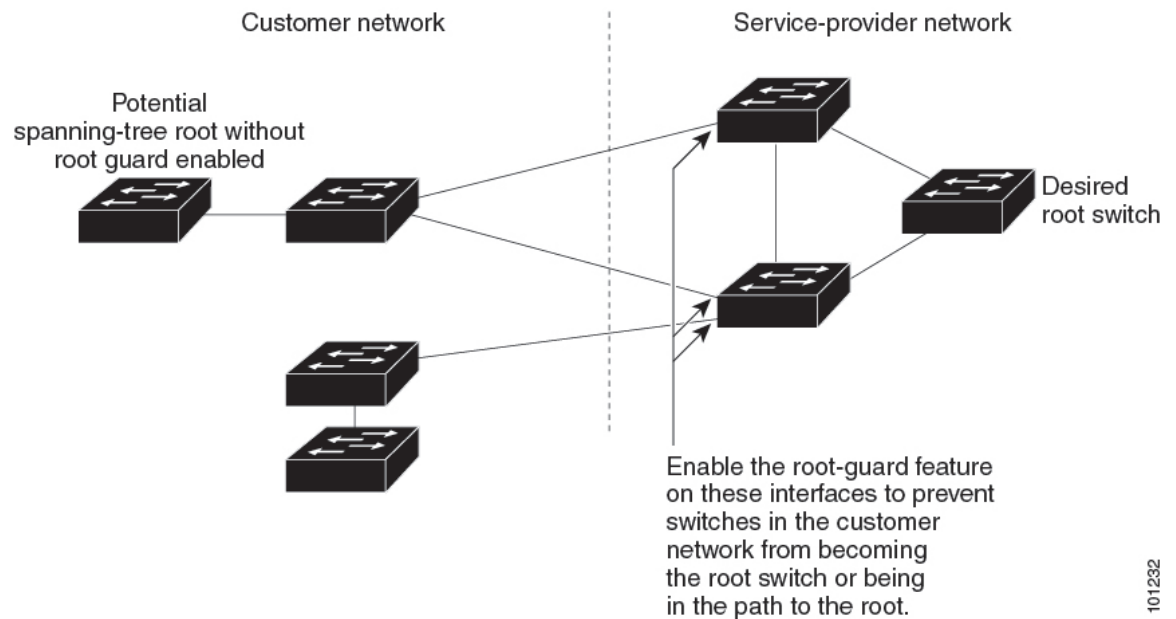
You can use EtherChannel guard to detect an EtherChannel misconfiguration between the switch and a connected device. A misconfiguration can occur if the switch interfaces are configured in an EtherChannel, but the interfaces on the other device are not. A misconfiguration can also occur if the channel parameters are not the same at both ends of the EtherChannel.

If the switch detects a misconfiguration on the other device, EtherChannel guard places the switch interfaces in the error-disabled state, and displays an error message.

## Root Guard

**Figure 21: Root Guard in a Service-Provider Network**

The Layer 2 network of a service provider (SP) can include many connections to switches that are not owned by the SP. In such a topology, the spanning tree can reconfigure itself and select a customer switch as the root switch. You can avoid this situation by enabling root guard on SP switch interfaces that connect to switches in your customer's network. If spanning-tree calculations cause an interface in the customer network to be selected as the root port, root guard then places the interface in the root-inconsistent (blocked) state to prevent the customer's switch from becoming the root switch or being in the path to the root.



101232

If a switch outside the SP network becomes the root switch, the interface is blocked (root-inconsistent state), and spanning tree selects a new root switch. The customer's switch does not become the root switch and is not in the path to the root.

If the switch is operating in MST mode, root guard forces the interface to be a designated port. If a boundary port is blocked in an internal spanning-tree (IST) instance because of root guard, the interface also is blocked in all MST instances. A boundary port is an interface that connects to a LAN, the designated switch of which is either an IEEE 802.1D switch or a switch with a different MST region configuration.

Root guard that is enabled on an interface applies to all the VLANs to which the interface belongs. VLANs can be grouped and mapped to an MST instance.



**Caution** Misuse of the root guard feature can cause a loss of connectivity.

## Loop Guard

You can use loop guard to prevent alternate or root ports from becoming designated ports because of a failure that leads to a unidirectional link. This feature is most effective when it is enabled on the entire switched network. Loop guard prevents alternate and root ports from becoming designated ports, and spanning tree does not send BPDUs on root or alternate ports.

When the switch is operating in PVST+ or rapid-PVST+ mode, loop guard prevents alternate and root ports from becoming designated ports, and spanning tree does not send BPDUs on root or alternate ports.

When the switch is operating in MST mode, BPDUs are not sent on nonboundary ports only if the interface is blocked by loop guard in all MST instances. On a boundary port, loop guard blocks the interface in all MST instances.

# How to Configure Optional Spanning-Tree Features

The following sections provide information about configuring Optional Spanning-Tree features:

## (Optional) Enabling PortFast

An interface with the PortFast feature enabled is moved directly to the spanning-tree forwarding state without waiting for the standard forward-time delay.

If you enable the voice VLAN feature, the PortFast feature is automatically enabled. When you disable voice VLAN, the PortFast feature is not automatically disabled.

You can enable this feature if your switch is running PVST+, Rapid PVST+, or MSTP.



**Caution** Use PortFast only when connecting a single end station to an access or trunk port. Enabling this feature on an interface that is connected to a switch or hub could prevent spanning tree from detecting and disabling loops in your network, which could cause broadcast storms and address-learning problems.

To enable PortFast, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree portfast [trunk]</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree portfast trunk</b>	Enables PortFast on an access port that is connected to a single workstation or server.  By specifying the <b>trunk</b> keyword, you can enable PortFast on a trunk port.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p><b>Note</b> To enable PortFast on trunk ports, you must use the <b>spanning-tree portfast trunk</b> interface configuration command. The <b>spanning-tree portfast</b> command will not work on trunk ports.</p> <p>Make sure that there are no loops in the network between the trunk port and the workstation or server before you enable PortFast on a trunk port.</p> <p>By default, PortFast is disabled on all interfaces.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

#### What to do next

You can use the **spanning-tree portfast default** global configuration command to globally enable the PortFast feature on all nontrunking ports.

## Enabling PortFast Port Types

The following sections provide configurational information about enabling PortFast port types:

### Configuring the PortFast Default State Globally

To configure the default PortFast state, perform this task:

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>spanning-tree portfast [ edge   network   normal] default</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>spanning-tree portfast edge default</b>	<p>Configures the default state for all interfaces on the switch. You have these options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (Optional) <b>edge</b>: Configures all interfaces as edge ports. This assumes that all ports are connected to hosts/servers.</li> <li>• (Optional) <b>network</b>: Configures all interfaces as spanning tree network ports. This assumes that all ports are connected</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>to switches and bridges. Bridge Assurance is enabled on all network ports by default.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (Optional) <b>normal</b>: Configures all interfaces as normal spanning tree ports. These ports can be connected to any type of device.</li> <li>• <b>default</b>: The default port type is <b>normal</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Exits configuration mode.

**Related Topics**

[Configuring a PortFast Edge Port on a Specified Interface](#), on page 66

[Configuring a PortFast Network Port on a Specified Interface](#), on page 68

## Configuring a PortFast Edge Port on a Specified Interface

Interfaces configured as edge ports immediately transition to the forwarding state, without passing through the blocking or learning states, on linkup. To configure an edge port on a specified interface, perform this task:



**Note** Because the purpose of this type of port is to minimize the time that access ports must wait for spanning tree to converge, it is most effective when used on access ports. If you enable PortFast edge on a port connecting to another switch, you risk creating a spanning tree loop.

To configure a PortFast edge port on a specified interface, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface</b> { { <b>fastethernet</b>   <b>gigabitethernet</b>   <b>tengigabitethernet</b> } <i>slot /port</i> }   { <b>port-channel</b> <i>port_channel_number</i> }  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitethernet1/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>[no] spanning-tree portfast edge</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>spanning-tree portfast edge</b>	Enables edge behavior on a Layer 2 access port connected to an end workstation or server.  (Optional) <b>trunk</b> : Enables edge behavior on a trunk port. Use this keyword if the link is a trunk. Use this command only on ports that are connected to end host devices that terminate VLANs and from which the port should never receive STP BPDUs. Such end host devices include workstations, servers, and ports on routers that are not configured to support bridging.  Use the <b>no</b> version of the command to disable PortFast edge.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>end</b>	Exits configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show spanning-tree interface { {fastethernet   gigabitethernet   tengigabitethernet } slot /port }   { port-channel port_channel_number } portfast edge</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show spanning-tree interface</b>	Displays spanning-tree PortFast information for the specified interface.

### Example

This example shows how to enable edge behavior on GigabitEthernet interface 5/7 and verify the configuration:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface fastethernet 5/7
Device(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast edge
Device(config-if)# end
Device#

Device# show running-config interface fastethernet 5/7
Building configuration...
Current configuration:
!
interface GigabitEthernet5/7
no ip address
switchport
switchport access vlan 200
switchport mode access
spanning-tree portfast edge
end
```

This example shows how you can display that port GigabitEthernet 5/8 is currently in the edge state:

```
Device# show spanning-tree vlan 200
VLAN0200
```

```
Spanning tree enabled protocol rstp
Root ID Priority 2
Address 001b.2a68.5fc0
Cost 3
Port 125 (GigabitEthernet5/9)
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
```

```
Bridge ID Priority 2 (priority 0 sys-id-ext 2)
Address 7010.5c9c.5200
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
Aging Time 0 sec
```

```
Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type
```

```
-----
Gi5/7 Desg FWD 4 128.1 P2p Edge
```

### Related Topics

[Configuring the PortFast Default State Globally](#), on page 65

[Configuring a PortFast Network Port on a Specified Interface](#), on page 68

## Configuring a PortFast Network Port on a Specified Interface

Ports that are connected to Layer 2 switches and bridges can be configured as network ports.



**Note** Bridge Assurance is enabled only on PortFast network ports. For more information, see [Bridge Assurance](#), on page 53.

To configure a port as a network port, perform this task:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface</b> { { <b>fastethernet</b>   <b>gigabitethernet</b>   <b>tengigabitethernet</b> } <i>slot /port</i> }   { <b>port-channel</b> <i>port_channel_number</i> }  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitethernet1/1</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>[no] spanning-tree portfast network</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree portfast network</b>	Configures the port as a network port. If you have enabled Bridge Assurance globally, it automatically runs on a spanning tree network port.  Use the <b>no</b> keyword to disable PortFast.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Exits configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running interface</b> { { <b>fastethernet</b>   <b>gigabitethernet</b>   <b>tengigabitethernet</b> } <i>slot /port</i> }   { <b>port-channel</b> <i>port_channel_number</i> }  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show running interface gigabitethernet 5/8</b>	Verifies the configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to configure GigabitEthernet interface 5/8 as a network port and verify configuration:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 5/8
Device(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast network
Device(config-if)# end
Device#

Device# show running-config interface gigabitethernet 5/8
Building configuration...
Current configuration:
!
interface GigabitEthernet5/8
no ip address
switchport
switchport access vlan 200
switchport mode access
spanning-tree portfast network
end
```

### Related Topics

[Configuring the PortFast Default State Globally](#), on page 65

[Configuring a PortFast Edge Port on a Specified Interface](#), on page 66

## (Optional) Enabling Bridge Protocol Data Unit Guard

You can enable the BPDU guard feature if your switch is running PVST+, Rapid PVST+, or MSTP.



### Caution

Configure PortFast edge only on ports that connect to end stations; otherwise, an accidental topology loop could cause a data packet loop and disrupt switch and network operation.

To enable BPDU guard, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree portfast edge bpduguard default</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree portfast edge bpduguard default</b>	Enables BPDU guard.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</b>	Specifies the interface that is connected to an end station, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>spanning-tree portfast edge</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree portfast edge</b>	Enables the PortFast edge feature.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**What to do next**

To prevent the port from shutting down, you can use the **errdisable detect cause bpduguard shutdown vlan** global configuration command to shut down just the offending VLAN on the port where the violation occurred.

You also can use the **spanning-tree bpduguard enable** interface configuration command to enable BPDU guard on any port without also enabling the PortFast edge feature. When the port receives a BPDU, it is put it in the error-disabled state.

## Enabling BPDU Filtering

You can also use the **spanning-tree bpdufilter enable** interface configuration command to enable BPDU filtering on any interface without also enabling the PortFast edge feature. This command prevents the interface from sending or receiving BPDUs.



**Caution** Enabling BPDU filtering on an interface is the same as disabling spanning tree on it and can result in spanning-tree loops.

You can enable the BPDU filtering feature if your switch is running PVST+, Rapid PVST+, or MSTP.



**Caution** Configure PortFast edge only on interfaces that connect to end stations; otherwise, an accidental topology loop could cause a data packet loop and disrupt switch and network operation.

This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree portfast edge bpdufilter default</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree portfast edge bpdufilter default</b>	Globally enables BPDU filtering. By default, BPDU filtering is disabled.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</b>	Specifies the interface connected to an end station, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>spanning-tree portfast edge</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree portfast edge</b>	Enables the PortFast edge feature on the specified interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

# Configuring Bridge Assurance

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>spanning-tree bridge assurance</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>spanning-tree bridge assurance</b>	Enables Bridge Assurance on all network ports on the switch.  Bridge Assurance is enabled by default.  Use the <b>no</b> version of the command to disable the feature. Disabling Bridge Assurance causes all configured network ports to behave as normal spanning tree ports.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>end</b>	Exits configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show spanning-tree summary</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show spanning-tree summary</b>	Displays spanning tree information and shows if Bridge Assurance is enabled.

## Example

This example shows how to display spanning tree information and verify if Bridge Assurance is enabled. Look for these details in the output:

- Portfast Default—Network
- Bridge Assurance—Enabled

```
Device# show spanning-tree summary
Switch is in rapid-pvst mode
Root bridge for: VLAN0199-VLAN0200, VLAN0128
EtherChannel misconfig guard is enabled
Extended system ID is enabled
Portfast Default is network
Portfast Edge BPDU Guard Default is disabled
Portfast Edge BPDU Filter Default is disabled
Loopguard Default is enabled
PVST Simulation Default is enabled but inactive in rapid-pvst mode
Bridge Assurance is enabled
UplinkFast is disabled
BackboneFast is disabled
Configured Pathcost method used is short

Name Blocking Listening Learning Forwarding STP Active
-----
```

```
VLAN0199 0 0 0 5 5
VLAN0200 0 0 0 4 4
VLAN0128 0 0 0 4 4
```

```
-----
3 vlans 0 0 0 13 13
```

This example shows how to verify if GigabitEthernet 5/8 (configured as a network port), is in a normal state.

(From the **show spanning-tree summary** output above, we know that Bridge Assurance is enabled on GigabitEthernet 5/8).

```
Device# show spanning-tree vlan
Sep 17 09:51:36.370 PDT: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console2
VLAN0200
Spanning tree enabled protocol rstp
Root ID Priority 2
Address 7010.5c9c.5200
This bridge is the root
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec

Bridge ID Priority 2 (priority 0 sys-id-ext 2)
Address 7010.5c9c.5200
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
Aging Time 0 sec

Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type
-----
Gi5/7 Desg FWD 4 128.1 P2p Edge
Gi5/8 Desg FWD 3 128.480 P2p Network
Gi5/9 Desg FWD 4 128.169 P2p Edge
Gi5/10 Desg FWD 4 128.215 P2p Network
```

This example shows how port GigabitEthernet 5/8 (configured as a network port), is currently in the Bridge Assurance inconsistent state:



**Note** The output shows the port type as network and \*BA\_Inc, indicating that the port is in an inconsistent state.

```
Device# show spanning-tree vlan

VLAN200
Spanning tree enabled protocol rstp
Root ID Priority 32778
Address 0002.172c.f400
This bridge is the root
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
Bridge ID Priority 32778 (priority 32768 sys-id-ext 10)
Address 0002.172c.f400
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
Aging Time 300
Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type
-----
Gia5/8 Desg BKN*4 128.270 Network, P2p *BA_Inc
```

## (Optional) Enabling UplinkFast for Use with Redundant Links



**Note** When you enable UplinkFast, it affects all VLANs on the switch or switch stack. You cannot configure UplinkFast on an individual VLAN.

You can configure the UplinkFast or the Cross-Stack UplinkFast (CSUF) feature for Rapid PVST+ or for the MSTP, but the feature remains disabled (inactive) until you change the spanning-tree mode to PVST+.

Follow these steps to enable UplinkFast and CSUF.

### Before you begin

UplinkFast cannot be enabled on VLANs that have been configured with a switch priority. To enable UplinkFast on a VLAN with switch priority configured, first restore the switch priority on the VLAN to the default value using the **no spanning-tree vlan *vlan-id* priority** global configuration command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree uplinkfast [<i>max-update-rate</i> <i>pkts-per-second</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree uplinkfast</b> <b>max-update-rate 200</b>	Enables UplinkFast. (Optional) For <i>pkts-per-second</i> , the range is 0 to 32000 packets per second; the default is 150. If you set the rate to 0, station-learning frames are not generated, and the spanning-tree topology converges more slowly after a loss of connectivity. When you enter this command, CSUF also is enabled on all nonstack port interfaces.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

When UplinkFast is enabled, the switch priority of all VLANs is set to 49152. If you change the path cost to a value less than 3000 and you enable UplinkFast or UplinkFast is already enabled, the path cost of all interfaces and VLAN trunks is increased by 3000 (if you change the path cost to 3000 or above, the path cost is not altered). The changes to the switch priority and the path cost reduce the chance that a switch will become the root switch.

When UplinkFast is disabled, the switch priorities of all VLANs and path costs of all interfaces are set to default values if you did not modify them from their defaults.

When you enable the UplinkFast feature using these instructions, CSUF is automatically globally enabled on nonstack port interfaces.

## (Optional) Disabling UplinkFast

Follow these steps to disable UplinkFast and Cross-Stack UplinkFast (CSUF).

### Before you begin

UplinkFast must be enabled.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no spanning-tree uplinkfast</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>no spanning-tree uplinkfast</b>	Disables UplinkFast and CSUF on the switch and all of its VLANs.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

When UplinkFast is disabled, the switch priorities of all VLANs and path costs of all interfaces are set to default values if you did not modify them from their defaults.

When you disable the UplinkFast feature using these instructions, CSUF is automatically globally disabled on nonstack port interfaces.

## (Optional) Enabling BackboneFast

You can enable BackboneFast to detect indirect link failures and to start the spanning-tree reconfiguration sooner.

You can configure the BackboneFast feature for Rapid PVST+ or for the MSTP, but the feature remains disabled (inactive) until you change the spanning-tree mode to PVST+.

Follow these steps to enable BackboneFast on the switch.

**Before you begin**

If you use BackboneFast, you must enable it on all switches in the network. BackboneFast is not supported on Token Ring VLANs. This feature is supported for use with third-party switches.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree backbonefast</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree backbonefast</b>	Enables BackboneFast.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

**(Optional) Enabling EtherChannel Guard**

You can enable EtherChannel guard to detect an EtherChannel misconfiguration if your device is running PVST+, Rapid PVST+, or MSTP.

Follow these steps to enable EtherChannel Guard on the device.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree etherchannel guard misconfig</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree etherchannel guard misconfig</b>	Enables EtherChannel guard.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

#### What to do next

You can use the **show interfaces status err-disabled** privileged EXEC command to show which device ports are disabled because of an EtherChannel misconfiguration. On the remote device, you can enter the **show etherchannel summary** command in privileged EXEC mode to verify the EtherChannel configuration.

After the configuration is corrected, enter the **shutdown** and **no shutdown** interface configuration commands on the port-channel interfaces that were misconfigured.

## (Optional) Enabling Root Guard

Root guard that is enabled on an interface applies to all the VLANs to which the interface belongs. Do not enable the root guard on interfaces to be used by the UplinkFast feature. With UplinkFast, the backup interfaces (in the blocked state) replace the root port in the case of a failure. However, if root guard is also enabled, all the backup interfaces used by the UplinkFast feature are placed in the root-inconsistent state (blocked) and are prevented from reaching the forwarding state.



**Note** You cannot enable both root guard and loop guard at the same time.

You can enable this feature if your switch is running PVST+, Rapid PVST+, or MSTP.

Follow these steps to enable root guard on the switch.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</b>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>spanning-tree guard root</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Enables root guard on the interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree guard root</b>	By default, root guard is disabled on all interfaces.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Enabling Loop Guard

You can use loop guard to prevent alternate or root ports from becoming designated ports because of a failure that leads to a unidirectional link. This feature is most effective when it is configured on the entire switched network. Loop guard operates only on interfaces that are considered point-to-point by the spanning tree.



**Note** You cannot enable both loop guard and root guard at the same time.

You can enable this feature if your device is running PVST+, Rapid PVST+, or MSTP.

Follow these steps to enable loop guard on the device.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Enter one of the following commands:  • <b>show spanning-tree active</b> • <b>show spanning-tree mst</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show spanning-tree active</b>  or Device# <b>show spanning-tree mst</b>	Verifies which interfaces are alternate or root ports.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>spanning-tree loopguard default</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree loopguard default</b>	Enables loop guard.  By default, loop guard is disabled.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

# Monitoring the Spanning-Tree Status

Table 9: Commands for Monitoring the Spanning-Tree Status

Command	Purpose
<b>show spanning-tree active</b>	Displays spanning-tree information on active interfaces only.
<b>show spanning-tree detail</b>	Displays a detailed summary of interface information.
<b>show spanning-tree interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Displays spanning-tree information for the specified interface.
<b>show spanning-tree mst interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Displays MST information for the specified interface.
<b>show spanning-tree summary</b> [totals]	Displays a summary of interface states or displays the total line spanning-tree state section.
<b>show spanning-tree mst interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> portfast edge	Displays spanning-tree portfast information for the specified interface.

## Additional References for Optional Spanning Tree Features

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
For complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.	<i>Command Reference (Catalyst 9600 Series Switches)</i>

## Feature History for Optional Spanning Tree Features

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	Optional Spanning Tree Protocol	The optional features of the STP enhance loop prevention, protect against some possible user misconfigurations, and provide better control over the protocol parameters.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>.





## CHAPTER 4

# Configuring EtherChannels

- [Restrictions for EtherChannels, on page 81](#)
- [Information About EtherChannels, on page 81](#)
- [How to Configure EtherChannels, on page 93](#)
- [Monitoring EtherChannel, Port Aggregation Protocol, and Link Aggregation Control Protocol Status, on page 108](#)
- [Configuration Examples for EtherChannels, on page 109](#)
- [Additional References for EtherChannels, on page 112](#)
- [Feature History for EtherChannels, on page 112](#)

## Restrictions for EtherChannels

The following are restrictions for EtherChannels:

- All ports in an EtherChannel must be assigned to the same VLAN or they must be configured as trunk port.
- The LACP 1:1 redundancy feature is supported on port channel interfaces only.

## Information About EtherChannels

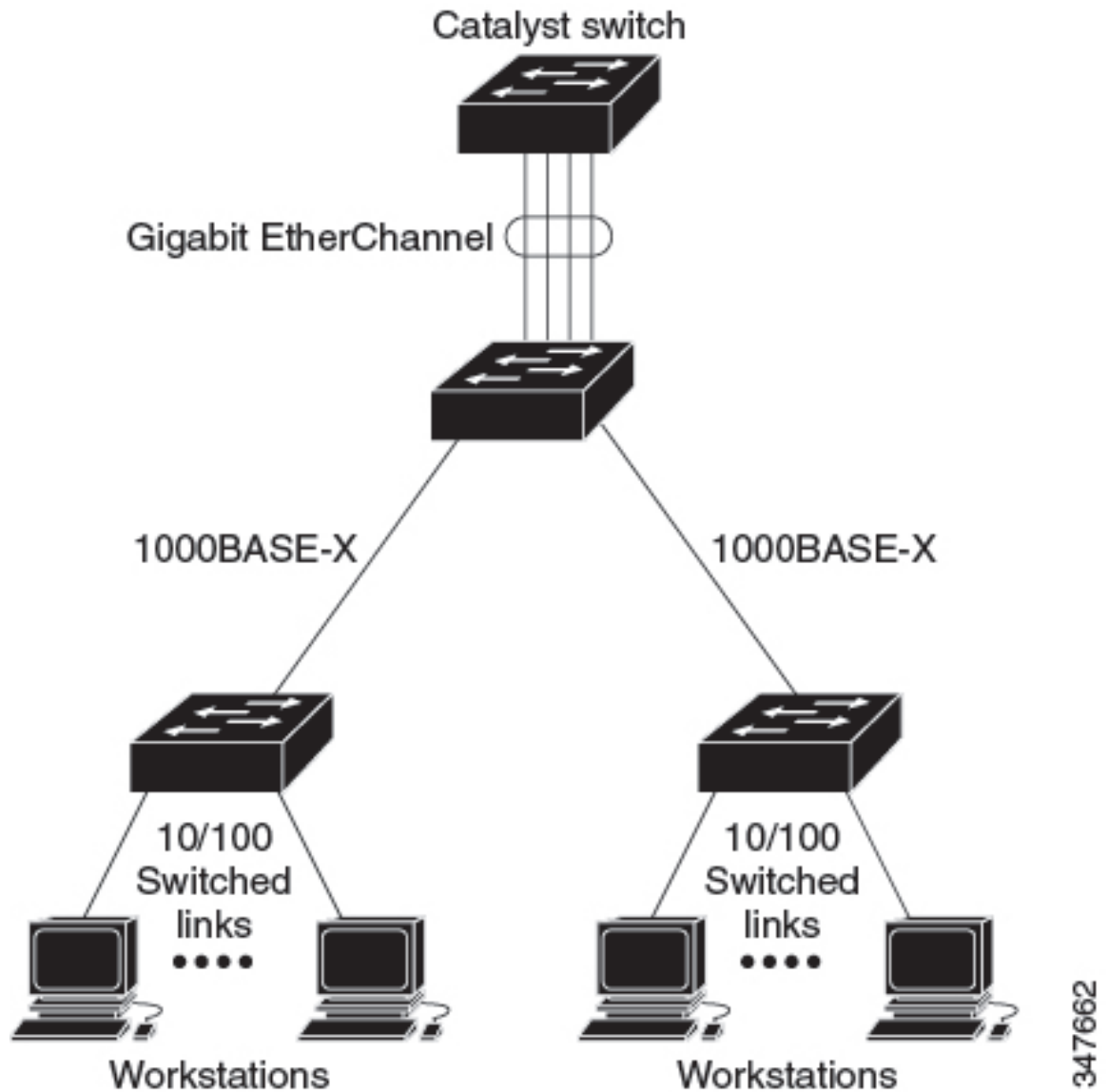
The following sections provide information about EtherChannels and the various modes to configure EtherChannels:

### EtherChannel Overview

EtherChannel provides fault-tolerant high-speed links between switches, routers, and servers. You can use the EtherChannel to increase the bandwidth between the wiring closets and the data center, and you can deploy it anywhere in the network where bottlenecks are likely to occur. EtherChannel provides automatic recovery for the loss of a link by redistributing the load across the remaining links. If a link fails, EtherChannel redirects traffic from the failed link to the remaining links in the channel without intervention.

An EtherChannel consists of individual Ethernet links that are bundled into a single logical link, and each EtherChannel can consist of up to eight compatibly configured Ethernet ports.

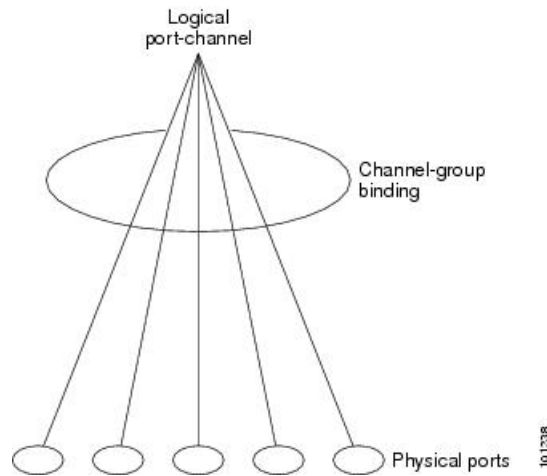
Figure 22: Typical EtherChannel Configuration



## Channel Groups and Port-Channel Interfaces

An EtherChannel comprises a channel group and a port-channel interface. The channel group binds physical ports to the port-channel interface. Configuration changes applied to the port-channel interface apply to all the physical ports bound together in the channel group.

Figure 23: Relationship Between Physical Ports, a Channel Group, and a Port-Channel Interface



The **channel-group** command binds the physical port and the port-channel interface together. Each EtherChannel has a port-channel logical interface numbered from 1 to 128. This port-channel interface number corresponds to the one specified with the **channel-group** interface configuration command.

- With Layer 2 ports, use the **channel-group** interface configuration command to dynamically create the port-channel interface.

You also can use the **interface port-channel port-channel-number** global configuration command to manually create the port-channel interface, but then you must use the **channel-group channel-group-number** command to bind the logical interface to a physical port. The *channel-group-number* can be the same as the *port-channel-number*, or you can use a new number. If you use a new number, the **channel-group** command dynamically creates a new port channel.

- With Layer 3 ports, you should manually create the logical interface by using the **interface port-channel** global configuration command followed by the **no switchport** interface configuration command. You then manually assign an interface to the EtherChannel by using the **channel-group** interface configuration command.
- With Layer 3 ports, use the **no switchport** interface command to configure the interface as a Layer 3 interface, and then use the **channel-group** interface configuration command to dynamically create the port-channel interface.



**Note**

While moving a port from Layer 2 to Layer 3, if the Layer 2 port is a member of a port-channel, first remove the port from the channel group using the **no channel group** command. Then use the **no switchport** command to move the port to Layer 3.

## Port Aggregation Protocol

The Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP) is a Cisco-proprietary protocol that can be run only on Cisco devices and on those devices that are licensed by vendors to support PAgP. PAgP facilitates the automatic creation of EtherChannels by exchanging PAgP packets between Ethernet ports. PAgP can be enabled on cross-stack EtherChannels.

By using PAgP, the switch or switch stack learns the identity of partners capable of supporting PAgP and the capabilities of each port. It then dynamically groups similarly configured ports (on a single device in the stack) into a single logical link (channel or aggregate port). Similarly configured ports are grouped based on hardware, administrative, and port parameter constraints. For example, PAgP groups the ports with the same speed, duplex mode, native VLAN, VLAN range, and trunking status and type. After grouping the links into an EtherChannel, PAgP adds the group to the spanning tree as a single device port.

## Port Aggregation Protocol Modes

PAgP modes specify whether a port can send PAgP packets, which start PAgP negotiations, or only respond to PAgP packets received.

**Table 10: EtherChannel PAgP Modes**

Mode	Description
<b>auto</b>	Places a port into a passive negotiating state, in which the port responds to PAgP packets it receives but does not start PAgP packet negotiation. This setting minimizes the transmission of PAgP packets.
<b>desirable</b>	Places a port into an active negotiating state, in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending PAgP packets.

Switch ports exchange PAgP packets only with partner ports that are configured in the **auto** or **desirable** modes. Ports that are configured in the **on** mode do not exchange PAgP packets.

Both the **auto** and **desirable** modes enable ports to negotiate with partner ports to form an EtherChannel based on criteria such as port speed. and for Layer 2 EtherChannels, based on trunk state and VLAN numbers.

Ports can form an EtherChannel when they are in different PAgP modes as long as the modes are compatible. For example:

- A port in the **desirable** mode can form an EtherChannel with another port that is in the **desirable** or **auto** mode.
- A port in the **auto** mode can form an EtherChannel with another port in the **desirable** mode.

A port in the **auto** mode cannot form an EtherChannel with another port that is also in the **auto** mode because neither port starts PAgP negotiation.

### Silent Mode

If your switch is connected to a partner that is PAgP-capable, you can configure the switch port for nonsilent operation by using the **non-silent** keyword. If you do not specify **non-silent** with the **auto** or **desirable** mode, silent mode is assumed.

Use the silent mode when the switch is connected to a device that is not PAgP-capable and seldom, if ever, sends packets. An example of a silent partner is a file server or a packet analyzer that is not generating traffic. In this case, running PAgP on a physical port that is connected to a silent partner prevents that switch port from ever becoming operational. However, the silent setting allows PAgP to operate, to attach the port to a channel group, and to use the port for transmission.



## Port Aggregation Protocol Learn Method and Priority

Network devices are classified as PAgP physical learners or aggregate-port learners. A device is a physical learner if it learns addresses by physical ports and directs transmissions based on that knowledge. A device is an aggregate-port learner if it learns addresses by aggregate (logical) ports. The learn method must be configured the same at both ends of the link.

When a device and its partner are both aggregate-port learners, they learn the address on the logical port-channel. The device sends packets to the source by using any of the ports in the EtherChannel. With aggregate-port learning, it is not important on which physical port the packet arrives.

PAgP cannot automatically detect when the partner device is a physical learner and when the local device is an aggregate-port learner. Therefore, you must manually set the learning method on the local device to learn addresses by physical ports. You also must set the load-distribution method to source-based distribution, so that any given source MAC address is always sent on the same physical port.

You also can configure a single port within the group for all transmissions and use other ports for hot-standby. The unused ports in the group can be swapped into operation in just a few seconds if the selected single port loses hardware-signal detection. You can configure which port is always selected for packet transmission by changing its priority with the **pagp port-priority** interface configuration command. The higher the priority, the more likely that the port will be selected.



**Note** The device supports address learning only on aggregate ports even though the **physical-port** keyword is provided in the CLI. The **pagp learn-method** command and the **pagp port-priority** command have no effect on the device hardware, but they are required for PAgP interoperability with devices that only support address learning by physical ports, such as the Catalyst 1900 switch.

When the link partner of the device is a physical learner, we recommend that you configure the device as a physical-port learner by using the **pagp learn-method physical-port** interface configuration command. Set the load-distribution method based on the source MAC address by using the **port-channel load-balance src-mac** global configuration command. The device then sends packets to the physical learner using the same port in the EtherChannel from which it learned the source address. Only use the **pagp learn-method** command in this situation.

## Port Aggregation Protocol Interaction with Other Features

The Dynamic Trunking Protocol (DTP) and the Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) send and receive packets over the physical ports in the EtherChannel. Trunk ports send and receive PAgP protocol data units (PDUs) on the lowest numbered VLAN.

In Layer 2 EtherChannels, the first port in the channel that comes up provides its MAC address to the EtherChannel. If this port is removed from the bundle, one of the remaining ports in the bundle provides its MAC address to the EtherChannel. For Layer 3 EtherChannels, the MAC address is allocated by the active device as soon as the interface is created (through the **interface port-channel** global configuration command).

PAgP sends and receives PAgP PDUs only from ports that are up and have PAgP enabled for the auto or desirable mode.

## Link Aggregation Control Protocol

The LACP is defined in IEEE 802.3ad and enables Cisco devices to manage Ethernet channels between devices that conform to the IEEE 802.3ad protocol. LACP facilitates the automatic creation of EtherChannels by exchanging LACP packets between Ethernet ports.

By using LACP, the switch or switch stack learns the identity of partners capable of supporting LACP and the capabilities of each port. It then dynamically groups similarly configured ports into a single logical link (channel or aggregate port). Similarly configured ports are grouped based on hardware, administrative, and port parameter constraints. For example, LACP groups the ports with the same speed, duplex mode, native VLAN, VLAN range, and trunking status and type. After grouping the links into an EtherChannel, LACP adds the group to the spanning tree as a single device port.

The independent mode behavior of ports in a port channel is changed. With CSCtn96950, by default, standalone mode is enabled. When no response is received from an LACP peer, ports in the port channel are moved to suspended state.

### Link Aggregation Control Protocol Modes

LACP modes specify whether a port can send LACP packets or only receive LACP packets.

*Table 11: EtherChannel LACP Modes*

Mode	Description
<b>active</b>	Places a port into an active negotiating state in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending LACP packets.
<b>passive</b>	Places a port into a passive negotiating state in which the port responds to LACP packets that it receives, but does not start LACP packet negotiation. This setting minimizes the transmission of LACP packets.

Both the **active** and **passive LACP** modes enable ports to negotiate with partner ports to an EtherChannel based on criteria such as port speed, and for Layer 2 EtherChannels, based on trunk state and VLAN numbers.

Ports can form an EtherChannel when they are in different LACP modes as long as the modes are compatible. For example:

- A port in the **active** mode can form an EtherChannel with another port that is in the **active** or **passive** mode.
- A port in the **passive** mode cannot form an EtherChannel with another port that is also in the **passive** mode because neither port starts LACP negotiation.

### Link Aggregation Control Protocol and Link Redundancy

LACP port-channel operation, bandwidth availability, and link redundancy can be further refined with the LACP port-channel min-links and the LACP max-bundle features.

The LACP port-channel min-links feature:

- Configures the minimum number of ports that must be linked up and bundled in the LACP port channel.
- Prevents a low-bandwidth LACP port channel from becoming active.

- Causes an LACP port channel to become inactive if there are too few active members ports to supply the required minimum bandwidth.

The LACP max-bundle feature:

- Defines an upper limit on the number of bundled ports in an LACP port channel.
- Allows hot-standby ports with fewer bundled ports. For example, in an LACP port channel with five ports, you can specify a max-bundle of three, and the two remaining ports are designated as hot-standby ports.

## Link Aggregation Control Protocol Interaction with Other Features

The DTP and the CDP send and receive packets over the physical ports in the EtherChannel. Trunk ports send and receive LACP PDUs on the lowest numbered VLAN.

In Layer 2 EtherChannels, the first port in the channel that comes up provides its MAC address to the EtherChannel. If this port is removed from the bundle, one of the remaining ports in the bundle provides its MAC address to the EtherChannel. For Layer 3 EtherChannels, the MAC address is allocated by the active device as soon as the interface is created through the **interface port-channel** global configuration command.

LACP sends and receives LACP PDUs only from ports that are up and have LACP enabled for the active or passive mode.

## EtherChannel On Mode

EtherChannel **on** mode can be used to manually configure an EtherChannel. The **on** mode forces a port to join an EtherChannel without negotiations. The **on** mode can be useful if the remote device does not support PAgP or LACP. In the **on** mode, a usable EtherChannel exists only when the devices at both ends of the link are configured in the **on** mode.

Ports that are configured in the **on** mode in the same channel group must have compatible port characteristics, such as speed and duplex. Ports that are not compatible are suspended, even though they are configured in the **on** mode.



### Caution

You should use care when using the **on** mode. This is a manual configuration, and ports on both ends of the EtherChannel must have the same configuration. If the group is misconfigured, packet loss or spanning-tree loops can occur.

## Load-Balancing and Forwarding Methods

EtherChannel balances the traffic load across the links in a channel by reducing part of the binary pattern formed from the addresses in the frame to a numerical value that selects one of the links in the channel. You can specify one of several different load-balancing modes, including load distribution based on MAC addresses, IP addresses, VLAN IDs, source addresses, destination addresses, or both source and destination addresses. The selected mode applies to all EtherChannels configured on the device.



**Note** Layer 3 Equal-cost multi path (ECMP) load balancing is based on source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, and layer 4 protocol. Fragmented packets will be treated on two different links based on the algorithm calculated using these parameters. Any changes in one of these parameters will result in load balancing.

## MAC Address Forwarding

With source-MAC address forwarding, when packets are forwarded to an EtherChannel, they are distributed across the ports in the channel based on the source-MAC address of the incoming packet. Therefore, to provide load-balancing, packets from different hosts use different ports in the channel, but packets from the same host use the same port in the channel.

With destination-MAC address forwarding, when packets are forwarded to an EtherChannel, they are distributed across the ports in the channel based on the destination host's MAC address of the incoming packet. Therefore, packets to the same destination are forwarded over the same port, and packets to a different destination are sent on a different port in the channel.

With source-and-destination MAC address forwarding, when packets are forwarded to an EtherChannel, they are distributed across the ports in the channel based on both the source and destination MAC addresses. This forwarding method, a combination source-MAC and destination-MAC address forwarding methods of load distribution, can be used if it is not clear whether source-MAC or destination-MAC address forwarding is better suited on a particular device. With source-and-destination MAC-address forwarding, packets sent from host A to host B, host A to host C, and host C to host B could all use different ports in the channel.

## IP Address Forwarding

With source-IP address-based forwarding, packets are distributed across the ports in the EtherChannel based on the source-IP address of the incoming packet. To provide load balancing, packets from different IP addresses use different ports in the channel, and packets from the same IP address use the same port in the channel.

With destination-IP address-based forwarding, packets are distributed across the ports in the EtherChannel based on the destination-IP address of the incoming packet. To provide load balancing, packets from the same IP source address that is sent to different IP destination addresses could be sent on different ports in the channel. Packets sent from different source IP addresses to the same destination IP address are always sent on the same port in the channel.

With source-and-destination IP address-based forwarding, packets are distributed across the ports in the EtherChannel based on both the source and destination IP addresses of the incoming packet. This forwarding method, a combination of source-IP and destination-IP address-based forwarding, can be used if it is not clear whether source-IP or destination-IP address-based forwarding is better suited on a particular device. In this method, packets sent from the IP address A to IP address B, from IP address A to IP address C, and from IP address C to IP address B could all use different ports in the channel.

## VLAN ID based Forwarding

With VLAN ID based forwarding, packets are distributed across the ports in the EtherChannel based on the VLAN ID of the incoming packets and other parameters that are mentioned in the chosen load balance method. Packets with different VLAN IDs will use different ports in the channel and packets with the same VLAN ID will use the same port in the channel. In case of double tagged frames, the outer VLAN ID will be considered. In case of untagged frames, load balancing will be based on the other parameters mentioned. For example, if

**vlan-dst-ip** is chosen, then packets without a VLAN tag will be distributed based on the destination IP address. In case of VLAN translation, load balancing will be based on the translated VLAN ID.

## Load-Balancing Advantages

Different load-balancing methods have different advantages, and the choice of a particular load-balancing method should be based on the position of the device in the network and the kind of traffic that needs to be load-distributed.

### *Figure 24: Load Distribution and Forwarding Methods*

In the following figure, an EtherChannel of four workstations communicates with a router. Because the router is a single MAC-address device, source-based forwarding on the switch EtherChannel ensures that the switch uses all available bandwidth to the router. The router is configured for destination-based forwarding because the large number of workstations ensures that the traffic is evenly distributed from the router EtherChannel.

Use the option that provides the greatest variety in your configuration. For example, if the traffic on a channel is going only to a single MAC address, using the destination-MAC address always chooses the same link in the channel. Using source addresses or IP addresses might result in better load-balancing.

## EtherChannel and Switch Stacks

If a stack member that has ports participating in an EtherChannel fails or leaves the stack, the active switch removes the failed stack member switch ports from the EtherChannel. The remaining ports of the EtherChannel, if any, continue to provide connectivity.

When a switch is added to an existing stack, the new switch receives the running configuration from the active switch and updates itself with the EtherChannel-related stack configuration. The stack member also receives the operational information (the list of ports that are up and are members of a channel).

When two stacks merge that have EtherChannels configured between them, self-looped ports result. Spanning tree detects this condition and acts accordingly. Any PAgP or LACP configuration on a winning switch stack is not affected, but the PAgP or LACP configuration on the losing switch stack is lost after the stack reboots.

## Switch Stack and Port Aggregation Protocol

With PAgP, if the active switch fails or leaves the stack, the standby switch becomes the new active switch. The new active switch synchronizes the configuration of the stack members to that of the active switch. The PAgP configuration is not affected after an active switch change unless the EtherChannel has ports residing on the old active switch.

## Switch Stacks and Link Aggregation Control Protocol

With LACP, the system ID uses the stack MAC address from the active switch. When an active switch fails or leaves the stack and the standby switch becomes the new active switch, the LACP system ID is unchanged. By default, the LACP configuration is not affected after the active switch changes.

## Default EtherChannel Configuration

The default EtherChannel configuration is described in this table.

**Table 12: Default EtherChannel Configuration**

Feature	Default Setting
Channel groups	None assigned.
Port-channel logical interface	None defined.
PAgP mode	No default.
PAgP learn method	Aggregate-port learning on all ports.
PAgP priority	128 on all ports.
LACP mode	No default.
LACP learn method	Aggregate-port learning on all ports.

Feature	Default Setting
LACP port priority	32768 on all ports.
LACP system priority	32768.
LACP system ID	LACP system priority and the switch or stack MAC address.
Load-balancing	Load distribution on the switch is based on the source-MAC address of the incoming packet.  The source-MAC address is <b>src-dst-mixed-ip-port</b> .

## EtherChannel Configuration Guidelines

If improperly configured, some EtherChannel ports are automatically disabled to avoid network loops and other problems. Follow these guidelines to avoid configuration problems:

- A maximum of 128 EtherChannels (non-StackWise Virtual setup) and 126 EtherChannels (StackWise Virtual setup) are supported on a switch or switch stack.
- Configure a PAgP EtherChannel with up to eight Ethernet ports of the same type.
- Configure a LACP EtherChannel with up to 16 Ethernet ports of the same type. Up to eight ports can be active, and up to eight ports can be in standby mode.
- Configure all ports in an EtherChannel to operate at the same speeds and duplex modes.
- Enable all ports in an EtherChannel. A port in an EtherChannel that is disabled by using the **shutdown** interface configuration command is treated as a link failure, and its traffic is transferred to one of the remaining ports in the EtherChannel.
- When a group is first created, all ports follow the parameters set for the first port to be added to the group. If you change the configuration of one of these parameters, you must also make the changes to all ports in the group:
  - Allowed-VLAN list
  - Spanning-tree path cost for each VLAN
  - Spanning-tree port priority for each VLAN
  - Spanning-tree Port Fast setting
- Do not configure a port to be a member of more than one EtherChannel group.
- Do not configure an EtherChannel in both the PAgP and LACP modes. EtherChannel groups running PAgP and LACP can coexist on the same switch or on different switches in the stack. Individual EtherChannel groups can run either PAgP or LACP, but they cannot interoperate.
- Do not configure a port that is an active or a not-yet-active member of an EtherChannel as an IEEE 802.1x port. If you try to enable IEEE 802.1x on an EtherChannel port, an error message appears, and IEEE 802.1x is not enabled.

- If EtherChannels are configured on device interfaces, remove the EtherChannel configuration from the interfaces before globally enabling IEEE 802.1x on a device by using the **dot1x system-auth-control** global configuration command.

## Layer 2 EtherChannel Configuration Guidelines

When configuring Layer 2 EtherChannels, follow these guidelines:

- Assign all ports in the EtherChannel to the same VLAN, or configure them as trunks. Ports with different native VLANs cannot form an EtherChannel.
- An EtherChannel supports the same allowed range of VLANs on all the ports in a trunking Layer 2 EtherChannel. If the allowed range of VLANs is not the same, the ports do not form an EtherChannel even when PAgP is set to the **auto** or **desirable** mode.
- Ports with different spanning-tree path costs can form an EtherChannel if they are otherwise compatibly configured. Setting different spanning-tree path costs does not, by itself, make ports incompatible for the formation of an EtherChannel.

## Layer 3 EtherChannel Configuration Guidelines

For Layer 3 EtherChannels, assign the Layer 3 address to the port-channel logical interface, not to the physical ports in the channel.

## Auto-LAG

The auto-LAG feature provides the ability to auto create EtherChannels on ports that are connected to a switch. By default, auto-LAG is disabled globally and is enabled on all port interfaces. The auto-LAG applies to a switch only when it is enabled globally.

On enabling auto-LAG globally, the following scenarios are possible:

- All port interfaces participate in creation of auto EtherChannels provided the partner port interfaces have EtherChannel configured on them. For more information, see the *"The supported auto-LAG configurations between the actor and partner devices"* table below.
- Ports that are already part of manual EtherChannels cannot participate in creation of auto EtherChannels.
- When auto-LAG is disabled on a port interface that is already a part of an auto created EtherChannel, the port interface unbundles from the auto EtherChannel.

The following table shows the supported auto-LAG configurations between the actor and partner devices:

**Table 13: The supported auto-LAG configurations between the actor and partner devices**

Actor/Partner	Active	Passive	Auto
Active	Yes	Yes	Yes
Passive	Yes	No	Yes
Auto	Yes	Yes	Yes

On disabling auto-LAG globally, all auto created Etherchannels become manual EtherChannels.



You cannot add any configurations in an existing auto created EtherChannel. To add, you should first convert it into a manual EtherChannel by executing the **port-channel<channel-number>persistent**.



**Note** Auto-LAG uses the LACP protocol to create auto EtherChannel. Only one EtherChannel can be automatically created with the unique partner devices.

## Auto-LAG Configuration Guidelines

Follow these guidelines when configuring the auto-LAG feature.

- When auto-LAG is enabled globally and on the port interface, and if you do not want the port interface to become a member of the auto EtherChannel, disable the auto-LAG on the port interface.
- A port interface will not bundle to an auto EtherChannel when it is already a member of a manual EtherChannel. To allow it to bundle with the auto EtherChannel, first unbundle the manual EtherChannel on the port interface.
- When auto-LAG is enabled and auto EtherChannel is created, you can create multiple EtherChannels manually with the same partner device. But by default, the port tries to create auto EtherChannel with the partner device.
- The auto-LAG is supported only on Layer 2 EtherChannel. It is not supported on Layer 3 interface and Layer 3 EtherChannel.
- The auto-LAG is supported on cross-stack EtherChannel.

## How to Configure EtherChannels

After you configure an EtherChannel, configuration changes applied to the port-channel interface apply to all the physical ports assigned to the port-channel interface, and configuration changes applied to the physical port affect only the port where you apply the configuration.

The following sections provide various configuration information for EtherChannels:

## Configuring Layer 2 EtherChannels

Configure Layer 2 EtherChannels by assigning ports to a channel group with the **channel-group** command in interface configuration mode. This command automatically creates the port-channel logical interface.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	<p>Specifies a physical port, and enters interface configuration mode.</p> <p>Valid interfaces are physical ports.</p> <p>For a PAgP EtherChannel, you can configure up to eight ports of the same type and speed for the same group.</p> <p>For a LACP EtherChannel, you can configure up to 16 Ethernet ports of the same type. Up to eight ports can be active, and up to eight ports can be in standby mode.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switchport mode {access   trunk}</b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if)# <b>switchport mode access</b>	<p>Assigns all ports as static-access ports in the same VLAN, or configure them as trunks.</p> <p>If you configure the port as a static-access port, assign it to only one VLAN. The range is 1 to 4094.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>switchport access vlan <i>vlan-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if)# <b>switchport access vlan 22</b>	(Optional) If you configure the port as a static-access port, assign it to only one VLAN. The range is 1 to 4094.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>channel-group <i>channel-group-number</i> mode {auto [non-silent]   desirable [non-silent]   on }   { active   passive}</b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if)# <b>channel-group 5 mode auto</b>	<p>Assigns the port to a channel group, and specifies the PAgP or the LACP mode.</p> <p>For <b>mode</b>, select one of these keywords:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>auto</b> —Enables PAgP only if a PAgP device is detected. It places the port into a passive negotiating state, in which the port responds to PAgP packets it receives but does not start PAgP packet negotiation.</li> <li>• <b>desirable</b> —Unconditionally enables PAgP. It places the port into an active negotiating state, in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending PAgP packets.</li> <li>• <b>on</b> —Forces the port to channel without PAgP or LACP. In the <b>on</b> mode, an EtherChannel exists only when a port group in the <b>on</b> mode is connected to another port group in the <b>on</b> mode.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>non-silent</b> —(Optional) If your device is connected to a partner that is PAgP-capable, configures the device port for nonsilent operation when the port is in the <b>auto</b> or <b>desirable</b> mode. If you do not specify <b>non-silent</b>, silent is assumed. The silent setting is for connections to file servers or packet analyzers. This setting allows PAgP to operate, to attach the port to a channel group, and to use the port for transmission.</li> <li>• <b>active</b>—Enables LACP only if a LACP device is detected. It places the port into an active negotiating state in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending LACP packets.</li> <li>• <b>passive</b> —Enables LACP on the port and places it into a passive negotiating state in which the port responds to LACP packets that it receives, but does not start LACP packet negotiation.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Layer 3 EtherChannels

Follow these steps to assign an Ethernet port to a Layer 3 EtherChannel. This procedure is required.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>  <b>Example:</b>	Specifies a physical port, and enters interface configuration mode.  Valid interfaces include physical ports.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</b>	For a PAgP EtherChannel, you can configure up to eight ports of the same type and speed for the same group.  For a LACP EtherChannel, you can configure up to 16 Ethernet ports of the same type. Up to eight ports can be active, and up to eight ports can be in standby mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>no ip address</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>no ip address</b>	Ensures that there is no IP address assigned to the physical port.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>no switchport</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>no switchport</b>	Puts the port into Layer 3 mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>channel-group channel-group-number mode</b> { <b>auto</b> [ <b>non-silent</b> ]   <b>desirable</b> [ <b>non-silent</b> ]   <b>on</b> }   { <b>active</b>   <b>passive</b> }  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>channel-group 5 mode auto</b>	Assigns the port to a channel group, and specifies the PAgP or the LACP mode.  For <b>mode</b> , select one of these keywords: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>auto</b>—Enables PAgP only if a PAgP device is detected. It places the port into a passive negotiating state, in which the port responds to PAgP packets it receives but does not start PAgP packet negotiation. This keyword is not supported when EtherChannel members are from different switches in the switch stack.</li> <li>• <b>desirable</b>—Unconditionally enables PAgP. It places the port into an active negotiating state, in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending PAgP packets. This keyword is not supported when EtherChannel members are from different switches in the switch stack.</li> <li>• <b>on</b>—Forces the port to channel without PAgP or LACP. In the <b>on</b> mode, an EtherChannel exists only when a port group in the <b>on</b> mode is connected to another port group in the <b>on</b> mode.</li> <li>• <b>non-silent</b>—(Optional) If your device is connected to a partner that is PAgP capable, configures the device port for nonsilent operation when the port is in the <b>auto</b> or <b>desirable</b> mode. If you do not specify <b>non-silent</b>, silent is assumed. The</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>silent setting is for connections to file servers or packet analyzers. This setting allows PAgP to operate, to attach the port to a channel group, and to use the port for transmission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>active</b>—Enables LACP only if a LACP device is detected. It places the port into an active negotiating state in which the port starts negotiations with other ports by sending LACP packets.</li> <li>• <b>passive</b>—Enables LACP on the port and places it into a passive negotiating state in which the port responds to LACP packets that it receives, but does not start LACP packet negotiation.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring EtherChannel Load-Balancing

You can configure EtherChannel load-balancing to use one of several different forwarding methods.

This task is optional.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	<p>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</p> <p>Enter your password if prompted.</p>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>port-channel load-balance { dst-ip   dst-mac   dst-mixed-ip-port   dst-port   extended   src-ip   src-mac   src-port   src-dst-ip   src-dst-mac   src-dst-mixed-ip-port   src-dst-port   src-ip   src-mac   src-mixed-ip-port   src-port   vlan-dst-ip   vlan-dst-mixed-ip-port   vlan-src-dst-ip  </b>	<p>Configures an EtherChannel load-balancing method.</p> <p>The default is <b>src-dst-mixed-ip-port</b>.</p> <p>Select one of these load-distribution methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>dst-ip</b>—Specifies destination-host IP address.</li> </ul>

Command or Action	Purpose
<b>vlan-src-dst-mixed-ip-port   vlan-src-ip   vlan-src-mixed-ip-port }</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# port-channel load-balance src-mac</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>dst-mac</b>—Specifies the destination-host MAC address of the incoming packet.</li> <li>• <b>dst-mixed-ip-port</b>—Specifies the host IP address and TCP/UDP port.</li> <li>• <b>dst-port</b>—Specifies the destination TCP/UDP port.</li> <li>• <b>src-dst-ip</b>—Specifies the source and destination host IP address.</li> <li>• <b>src-dst-mac</b>—Specifies the source and destination host MAC address.</li> <li>• <b>src-dst-mixed-ip-port</b>—Specifies the source and destination host IP address and TCP/UDP port.</li> <li>• <b>src-dst-port</b>—Specifies the source and destination TCP/UDP port.</li> <li>• <b>src-ip</b>—Specifies the source host IP address.</li> <li>• <b>src-mac</b>—Specifies the source MAC address of the incoming packet.</li> <li>• <b>src-mixed-ip-port</b>—Specifies the source host IP address and TCP/UDP port.</li> <li>• <b>src-port</b>—Specifies the source TCP/UDP port.</li> <li>• <b>vlan-dst-ip</b>—Specifies the VLAN ID and destination IP address.</li> <li>• <b>vlan-dst-mixed-ip-port</b>—Specifies the VLAN ID, destination IP address, and TCP/UDP port number.</li> <li>• <b>vlan-src-dst-ip</b>—Specifies the VLAN ID, source and destination IP address.</li> <li>• <b>vlan-src-dst-mixed-ip-port</b>—Specifies the VLAN ID, source and destination IP address, and TCP/UDP port number.</li> <li>• <b>vlan-src-ip</b>—Specifies the VLAN ID and source IP address.</li> <li>• <b>vlan-src-mixed-ip-port</b>—Specifies the VLAN ID, source IP address, and TCP/UDP port number.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring EtherChannel Extended Load-Balancing

Configure EtherChannel extended load-balancing when you want to use a combination of load-balancing methods.

This task is optional.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>port-channel load-balance extended</b> [ <b>dst-ip</b>   <b>dst-mac</b> <b>dst-port</b>   <b>ipv6-label</b>   <b>l3-proto</b>   <b>src-ip</b>   <b>src-mac</b>   <b>src-port</b> ]  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>port-channel load-balance extended dst-ip dst-mac src-ip</b>	Configures an EtherChannel extended load-balancing method.  The default is <b>src-dst-mixed-ip-port</b> .  Select one of these load-distribution methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>dst-ip</b>—Specifies destination-host IP address.</li> <li>• <b>dst-mac</b>—Specifies the destination-host MAC address of the incoming packet.</li> <li>• <b>dst-port</b>—Specifies the destination TCP/UDP port.</li> <li>• <b>ipv6-label</b>—Specifies the IPv6 flow label.</li> <li>• <b>l3-proto</b>—Specifies the Layer 3 protocol.</li> <li>• <b>src-ip</b>—Specifies the source host IP address.</li> <li>• <b>src-mac</b>—Specifies the source MAC address of the incoming packet.</li> <li>• <b>src-port</b>—Specifies the source TCP/UDP port.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring the Port Aggregation Protocol Learn Method and Priority

To configure the PAgP learn method and priority, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</b>	Specifies the port for transmission, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>pagp learn-method physical-port</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>pagp learn-method physical port</b>	Selects the PAgP learning method.  By default, <b>aggregation-port learning</b> is selected, which means the device sends packets to the source by using any of the ports in the EtherChannel. With aggregate-port learning, it is not important on which physical port the packet arrives.  Selects <b>physical-port</b> to connect with another device that is a physical learner.  Make sure to configure the <b>port-channel load-balance</b> global configuration command to <b>src-mac</b> .  The learning method must be configured the same at both ends of the link.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>pagp port-priority priority</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>pagp port-priority 200</b>	Assigns a priority so that the selected port is chosen for packet transmission.  For <i>priority</i> , the range is 0 to 255. The default is 128. The higher the priority, the more likely that the port will be used for PAgP transmission.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol Hot-Standby Ports

When LACP is enabled, the software, by default, tries to configure the maximum number of LACP-compatible ports in a channel, up to a maximum of 16 ports. Only eight LACP links can be active at one time; the remaining eight links are placed in hot-standby mode. If one of the active links becomes inactive, a link that is in the hot-standby mode becomes active in its place.

You can override the default behavior by specifying the maximum number of active ports in a channel, in which case, the remaining ports become hot-standby ports. For example, if you specify a maximum of five ports in a channel, up to 11 ports become hot-standby ports.

If you configure more than eight links for an EtherChannel group, the software automatically decides which of the hot-standby ports to make active based on the LACP priority. To every link between systems that operate LACP, the software assigns a unique priority that is made up of these elements (in priority order):

- LACP system priority
- System ID (the device MAC address)
- LACP port priority
- Port number

In priority comparisons, numerically lower values have higher priority. The priority decides which ports should be put in standby mode when there is a hardware limitation that prevents all compatible ports from aggregating.

Determining which ports are active and which are hot standby is a two-step procedure. First the system with a numerically lower system priority and system ID is placed in charge of the decision. Next, that system decides which ports are active and which are hot standby, based on its values for port priority and port number. The port priority and port number values for the other system are not used.

You can change the default values of the LACP system priority and the LACP port priority to affect how the software selects active and standby links.

## Configuring the LACP Max Bundle

When you specify the maximum number of bundled LACP ports allowed in a port channel, the remaining ports in the port channel are designated as hot-standby ports.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow these steps to configure the maximum number of LACP ports in a port channel. This procedure is optional.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface port-channel</b> <i>channel-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface port-channel</b> 2	Enters interface configuration mode for a port channel.  For <i>channel-number</i> , the range is 1 to 128.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>lACP max-bundle</b> <i>max-bundle-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>lACP max-bundle</b> 3	Specifies the maximum number of LACP ports in the port-channel bundle.  The range is 1 to 8.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol Port-Channel Standalone Disable

To disable the standalone EtherChannel member port state on a port channel, perform this task on the port channel interface:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface port-channel</b> <i>channel-group</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface port-channel</b> <i>channel-group</i>	Selects a port channel interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>port-channel standalone-disable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>port-channel standalone-disable</b>	Disables the standalone mode on the port-channel interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>end</b>	Exits configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show etherchannel</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>show etherchannel</b> <i>channel-group</i> <b>port-channel</b> Device# <b>show etherchannel</b> <i>channel-group</i> <b>detail</b>	Verifies the configuration.

## Configuring the LACP Port Channel Min-Links

You can specify the minimum number of active ports that must be in the link-up state and bundled in an EtherChannel for the port channel interface to transition to the link-up state. Using EtherChannel min-links, you can prevent low-bandwidth LACP EtherChannels from becoming active. Port channel min-links also cause LACP EtherChannels to become inactive if they have too few active member ports to supply the required minimum bandwidth.

To configure the minimum number of links that are required for a port channel. Perform the following tasks.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface port-channel</b> <i>channel-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface port-channel</b> <b>2</b>	Enters interface configuration mode for a port-channel.  For <i>channel-number</i> , the range is 1 to 128.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>port-channel min-links</b> <i>min-links-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>port-channel min-links</b> <b>3</b>	Specifies the minimum number of member ports that must be in the link-up state and bundled in the EtherChannel for the port channel interface to transition to the link-up state.  For <i>min-links-number</i> , the range is 2 to 8.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# <b>end</b>	

## (Optional) Configuring the Link Aggregation Control Protocol System Priority

You can configure the system priority for all the EtherChannels that are enabled for LACP by using the **lacp system-priority** command in global configuration mode. You cannot configure a system priority for each LACP-configured channel. By changing this value from the default, you can affect how the software selects active and standby links.

You can use the **show etherchannel summary** command in privileged EXEC mode to see which ports are in the hot-standby mode (denoted with an H port-state flag).

Follow these steps to configure the LACP system priority.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>lacp system-priority</b> <i>priority</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>lacp system-priority</b> 32000	Configures the LACP system priority. The range is 1 to 65535. The default is 32768. The lower the value, the higher the system priority.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## (Optional) Configuring the Link Aggregation Control Protocol Port Priority

By default, all ports use the same port priority. If the local system has a lower value for the system priority and the system ID than the remote system, you can affect which of the hot-standby links become active first by changing the port priority of LACP EtherChannel ports to a lower value than the default. The hot-standby ports that have lower port numbers become active in the channel first. You can use the **show etherchannel summary** privileged EXEC command to see which ports are in the hot-standby mode (denoted with an H port-state flag).



**Note** If LACP is not able to aggregate all the ports that are compatible (for example, the remote system might have more restrictive hardware limitations), all the ports that cannot be actively included in the EtherChannel are put in the hot-standby state and are used only if one of the channeled ports fails.

Follow these steps to configure the LACP port priority.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitethernet</b> <b>1/0/2</b>	Specifies the port to be configured, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>lacp port-priority</b> <i>priority</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>lacp port-priority</b> <b>32000</b>	Configures the LACP port priority. The range is 1 to 65535. The default is 32768. The lower the value, the more likely that the port will be used for LACP transmission.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol 1:1 Redundancy Fast Rate Timer

You can change the LACP timer rate to modify the duration of the LACP timeout. Use the **lacp rate** command to set the rate at which LACP control packets are received by an LACP-supported interface. You can change the timeout rate from the default rate (30 seconds) to the fast rate (1 second). This command is supported only on LACP-enabled interfaces.

To configure LACP 1:1 redundancy fast rate timer, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface {fastethernet   gigabitethernet   tengigabitethernet} slot/port</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/1</b>	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>larp rate {normal   fast}</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>larp rate fast</b>	Configures the rate at which LACP control packets are received by an LACP-supported interface.  To reset the timeout rate to its default, use the <b>no larp rate</b> command.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show larp internal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>show larp internal</b> Device# <b>show larp counters</b>	Verifies your configuration.

## Configuring Auto-LAG Globally

To configure Auto-LAG globally, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>[no] port-channel auto</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>port-channel auto</code>	Enables the auto-LAG feature on a switch globally. Use the no form of this command to disable the auto-LAG feature on the switch globally.  <b>Note</b> By default, the auto-LAG feature is enabled on the port.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show etherchannel auto</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>show etherchannel auto</code>	Displays that EtherChannel is created automatically.

## Configuring Auto-LAG on a Port Interface

To configure Auto-LAG on a port interface, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <code>enable</code>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</code>	Specifies the port interface to be enabled for auto-LAG, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>[no] channel-group auto</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <code>channel-group auto</code>	(Optional) Enables auto-LAG feature on individual port interface. Use the no form of this command to disable the auto-LAG feature on individual port interface.  <b>Note</b> By default, the auto-LAG feature is enabled on the port.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show etherchannel auto</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show etherchannel auto</b>	Displays that EtherChannel is created automatically.

## Configuring Persistence with Auto-LAG

You use the persistence command to convert the auto created EtherChannel into a manual one and allow you to add configuration on the existing EtherChannel.

To configure persistence with Auto-LAG, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>port-channel <i>channel-number</i> persistent</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>port-channel 1 persistent</b>	Converts the auto created EtherChannel into a manual one and allows you to add configuration on the EtherChannel.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show etherchannel summary</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show etherchannel summary</b>	Displays the EtherChannel information.

## Monitoring EtherChannel, Port Aggregation Protocol, and Link Aggregation Control Protocol Status

You can display EtherChannel, PAgP, and LACP status using the commands listed in this table.

*Table 14: Commands for Monitoring EtherChannel, PAgP, and LACP Status*

Command	Description
<b>clear lacp</b> { <i>channel-group-number</i> <b>counters</b>   <b>counters</b> }	Clears LACP channel-group information and traffic counters.



Command	Description
<b>clear pagp</b> { <i>channel-group-number</i> <b>counters</b>   <b>counters</b> }	Clears PAgP channel-group information and traffic counters.
<b>show etherchannel</b> [ <i>channel-group-number</i> { <b>detail</b>   <b>load-balance</b>   <b>port</b>   <b>port-channel</b>   <b>protocol</b>   <b>summary</b> } ] [ <b>detail</b>   <b>load-balance</b>   <b>port</b>   <b>port-channel</b>   <b>protocol</b>   <b>auto</b>   <b>summary</b> ]	Displays EtherChannel information in a brief, detailed, and one-line summary form. Also displays the load-balance or frame-distribution scheme, port, port-channel, protocol, and Auto-LAG information.
<b>show pagp</b> [ <i>channel-group-number</i> ] { <b>counters</b>   <b>internal</b>   <b>neighbor</b> }	Displays PAgP information such as traffic information, the internal PAgP configuration, and neighbor information.
<b>show pagp</b> [ <i>channel-group-number</i> ] <b>dual-active</b>	Displays the dual-active detection status.
<b>show lacp</b> [ <i>channel-group-number</i> ] { <b>counters</b>   <b>internal</b>   <b>neighbor</b>   <b>sys-id</b> }	Displays LACP information such as traffic information, the internal LACP configuration, and neighbor information.
<b>show running-config</b>	Verifies your configuration entries.
<b>show etherchannel load-balance</b>	Displays the load balance or frame distribution scheme among ports in the port channel.

## Configuration Examples for EtherChannels

The following sections provide various configuration examples for EtherChannels:

### Example: Configuring Layer 2 EtherChannels

This example shows how to configure an EtherChannel on a single switch in the stack. It assigns two ports as static-access ports in VLAN 10 to channel 5 with the PAgP mode **desirable**:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface range gigabitethernet2/0/1 -2
Device(config-if-range)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if-range)# switchport access vlan 10
Device(config-if-range)# channel-group 5 mode desirable non-silent
Device(config-if-range)# end
```

This example shows how to configure an EtherChannel on a single switch in the stack. It assigns two ports as static-access ports in VLAN 10 to channel 5 with the LACP mode **active**:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface range gigabitethernet2/0/1 -2
Device(config-if-range)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if-range)# switchport access vlan 10
Device(config-if-range)# channel-group 5 mode active
Device(config-if-range)# end
```

### Example: Configuring Layer 3 EtherChannels

This example shows how to configure a cross-stack EtherChannel. It uses LACP passive mode and assigns two ports on stack member 1 and one port on stack member 2 as static-access ports in VLAN 10 to channel 5:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface range gigabitethernet2/0/4 -5
Device(config-if-range)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if-range)# switchport access vlan 10
Device(config-if-range)# channel-group 5 mode passive
Device(config-if-range)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet3/0/3
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10
Device(config-if)# channel-group 5 mode passive
Device(config-if)# exit
```

PoE or LACP negotiation errors may occur if you configure two ports from switch to the access point (AP). This scenario can be avoided if the port channel configuration is on the switch side. For more details, see the following example:

```
Device(config)# interface Port-channel1
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 20
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# switchport nonegotiate
Device(config-if)# no port-channel standalone-disable
Device(config-if)# spanning-tree portfast
```



**Note** If the port reports LACP errors on port flap, you should include the following command as well: **no errdisable detect cause pagp-flap**

## Example: Configuring Layer 3 EtherChannels

This example shows how to configure a Layer 3 EtherChannel. It assigns two ports to channel 5 with the LACP mode **active**:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface range gigabitethernet2/0/1 -2
Device(config-if-range)# no ip address
Device(config-if-range)# no switchport
Device(config-if-range)# channel-group 5 mode active
Device(config-if-range)# end
```

This example shows how to configure a cross-stack Layer 3 EtherChannel. It assigns two ports on stack member 2 and one port on stack member 3 to channel 7 using LACP active mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface range gigabitethernet2/0/4 -5
Device(config-if-range)# no ip address
Device(config-if-range)# no switchport
Device(config-if-range)# channel-group 7 mode active
Device(config-if-range)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet3/0/3
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# channel-group 7 mode active
Device(config-if)# exit
```

## Example: Configuring Link Aggregation Control Protocol Hot-Standby Ports

This example shows how to configure an EtherChannel (port channel 2) that will be active when there are at least three active ports, will comprise up to seven active ports and the remaining ports (up to nine) as hot-standby ports:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface port-channel 2
Device(config-if)# port-channel min-links 3
Device(config-if)# lacp max-bundle 7
```

## Example: Configuring Auto LAG

This example shows how to configure Auto-LAG on a switch

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# port-channel auto
Device(config-if)# end
Device# show etherchannel auto
```

The following example shows the summary of EtherChannel that was created automatically.

```
Device# show etherchannel auto
Flags:  D - down          P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone  s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        R - Layer3       S - Layer2
        U - in use       f - failed to allocate aggregator
        M - not in use, minimum links not met
        u - unsuitable for bundling
        w - waiting to be aggregated
        d - default port
        A - formed by Auto LAG
```

```
Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators:           1
```

Group	Port-channel	Protocol	Ports
1	Po1 (SUA)	LACP	Gi1/0/45(P) Gi2/0/21(P) Gi3/0/21(P)

The following example shows the summary of auto EtherChannel after executing the **port-channel 1 persistent** command.

```
Device# port-channel 1 persistent
```

```
Device# show etherchannel summary
Switch# show etherchannel summary
Flags:  D - down          P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone  s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        R - Layer3       S - Layer2
        U - in use       f - failed to allocate aggregator
        M - not in use, minimum links not met
        u - unsuitable for bundling
        w - waiting to be aggregated
        d - default port
        A - formed by Auto LAG
```

```
Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators:           1
```

Group	Port-channel	Protocol	Ports
1	Pol(SU)	LACP	Gi1/0/45(P) Gi2/0/21(P) Gi3/0/21(P)

## Additional References for EtherChannels

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
For complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.	See the Layer 2/3 Commands section of the <i>Command Reference (Catalyst 9600 Series Switches)</i>

## Feature History for EtherChannels

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	EtherChannels	EtherChannel provides fault-tolerant high-speed links between switches, routers, and servers.
Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.1	LACP 1:1 Redundancy and Dampening	<p>The LACP 1:1 redundancy feature supports an EtherChannel configuration with one active link and fast switchover to a hot standby link.</p> <p>The LACP 1:1 hot standby dampening feature configures a timer that delays switchover back to the higher priority port after it becomes active.</p>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>.



## CHAPTER 5

# Configuring UniDirectional Link Detection

- [Restrictions for Configuring UniDirectional Link Detection, on page 113](#)
- [Information About UniDirectional Link Detection, on page 113](#)
- [How to Configure UDLD, on page 116](#)
- [Monitoring and Maintaining UniDirectional Link Detection, on page 120](#)
- [Console Error Messages For Fast UniDirectional Link Detection, on page 120](#)
- [Additional References for UniDirectional Link Detection, on page 121](#)
- [Feature History for UniDirectional Link Detection, on page 121](#)

## Restrictions for Configuring UniDirectional Link Detection

The following are restrictions for configuring UniDirectional Link Detection (UDLD):

- A UDLD-capable port can't detect a unidirectional link if it's connected to a UDLD-incapable port of another device.
- When configuring the mode (normal or aggressive), make sure that the same mode is configured on both sides of the link.
- In the initial phase, the number of ports on which Fast UDLD can be enabled is limited to 32. If this number is reached, then Fast UDLD isn't enabled on additional ports and an error message is printed on the console:  

```
UDLD: hundredGigE <> not enabled for fast hello, maximum number of fast hello ports (4) reached
```
- If you disable UDLD when Fast UDLD is configured, the entire UDLD configuration is removed.



### Caution

Loop guard works only on point-to-point links. We recommend that each end of the link has a directly connected device that is running STP.

## Information About UniDirectional Link Detection

UniDirectional Link Detection (UDLD) is a Layer 2 protocol that enables devices that are connected through fiber-optic or twisted-pair Ethernet cables to monitor the physical configuration of the cables and detect when

a unidirectional link exists. All connected devices must support UDLD for the protocol to successfully identify and disable unidirectional links. When UDLD detects a unidirectional link, it disables the affected port and alerts you. Unidirectional links can cause a variety of problems, including spanning-tree topology loops.

## Fast UDLD

Fast UDLD supports timers in the few-hundred milliseconds range, which enables subsecond unidirectional link detection. With Fast UDLD, the time to detect a unidirectional link can vary from less than one second to a few seconds (the detection time also depends on how the timers are configured). Link status messages are exchanged every 200ms.

A transition from slow mode to fast mode occurs on the port when both sides of a link have Fast UDLD configured and have negotiated successfully to move into fast mode. A transition from fast mode to slow mode occurs when one of the Fast UDLD configured ports has its port-level Fast UDLD configuration removed.

## Modes of Operation

UDLD and Fast UDLD support two modes of operation: normal (the default) and aggressive. In normal mode, UDLD can detect unidirectional links due to misconnected ports on fiber-optic connections. In aggressive mode, UDLD can also detect unidirectional links due to one-way traffic on fiber-optic and twisted-pair links and to misconnected ports on fiber-optic links.

In normal and aggressive modes, UDLD works with the Layer 1 mechanisms to learn the physical status of a link. At Layer 1, autonegotiation takes care of physical signaling and fault detection. UDLD performs tasks that autonegotiation cannot perform, such as detecting the identities of neighbors and shutting down misconnected ports. When you enable both autonegotiation and UDLD, the Layer 1 and Layer 2 detections work together to prevent physical and logical unidirectional connections and the malfunctioning of other protocols.

A unidirectional link occurs whenever traffic sent by a local device is received by its neighbor but traffic from the neighbor is not received by the local device.

### Normal Mode

In normal mode, UDLD detects a unidirectional link when fiber strands in a fiber-optic port are misconnected and the Layer 1 mechanisms do not detect this misconnection. If the ports are connected correctly but the traffic is one way, UDLD does not detect the unidirectional link because the Layer 1 mechanism, which is supposed to detect this condition, does not do so. In this case, the logical link is considered undetermined, and UDLD does not disable the port.

When UDLD is in normal mode, if one of the fiber strands in a pair is disconnected, as long as autonegotiation is active, the link does not stay up because the Layer 1 mechanisms detects a physical problem with the link. In this case, UDLD does not take any action and the logical link is considered undetermined.

### Aggressive Mode

In aggressive mode, UDLD detects a unidirectional link by using the previous detection methods. UDLD in aggressive mode can also detect a unidirectional link on a point-to-point link on which no failure between the two devices is allowed. It can also detect a unidirectional link when one of these problems exists:

- On fiber-optic or twisted-pair links, one of the ports cannot send or receive traffic.
- On fiber-optic or twisted-pair links, one of the ports is down while the other is up.

- One of the fiber strands in the cable is disconnected.

In these cases, UDLD disables the affected port.

In a point-to-point link, UDLD hello packets can be considered as a heart beat whose presence guarantees the health of the link. Conversely, the loss of the heart beat means that the link must be shut down if it is not possible to reestablish a bidirectional link.

If both fiber strands in a cable are working normally from a Layer 1 perspective, UDLD in aggressive mode detects whether those fiber strands are connected correctly and whether traffic is flowing bidirectionally between the correct neighbors. This check cannot be performed by autonegotiation because autonegotiation operates at Layer 1.

## Methods to Detect Unidirectional Links

UDLD operates by using two methods:

- Neighbor database maintenance
- Event-driven detection and echoing

### Neighbor Database Maintenance

UDLD learns about other UDLD-capable neighbors by periodically sending a hello packet (also called an advertisement or probe) on every active port to keep each device informed about its neighbors.

When the device receives a hello message, it caches the information until the age time (hold time or time-to-live) expires. If the device receives a new hello message before an older cache entry ages, the device replaces the older entry with the new one.

Whenever a port is disabled and UDLD is running, whenever UDLD is disabled on a port, or whenever the device is reset, UDLD clears all existing cache entries for the ports that are affected by the configuration change. UDLD sends at least one message to inform the neighbors to flush the part of their caches affected by the status change. The message is intended to keep the caches synchronized.



---

**Note** An interface does not support multiple UDLD neighbors. If an ingress UDLD protocol data unit (PDU) has multiple device IDs in echo type, length and value (TLV), the interface enters the error-disabled state.

---

### Event-Driven Detection and Echoing

UDLD relies on echoing as its detection operation. Whenever a UDLD device learns about a new neighbor or receives a resynchronization request from an out-of-sync neighbor, it restarts the detection window on its side of the connection and sends echo messages in reply. Because this behavior is the same on all UDLD neighbors, the sender of the echoes expects to receive an echo in reply.

If the detection window ends and no valid reply message are received, the link might shut down, depending on the UDLD mode. When UDLD is in normal mode, the link might be considered undetermined and might not be shut down. When UDLD is in aggressive mode, the link is considered unidirectional, and the port is disabled.

## UniDirectional Link Detection Reset Options

If an interface becomes disabled by UDLD, you can use one of the following options to reset UDLD:

- The **udld reset** interface configuration command.
- The **shutdown** interface configuration command followed by the **no shutdown** interface configuration command restarts the disabled port.
- The **no udld {aggressive | enable}** global configuration command followed by the **udld {aggressive | enable}** global configuration command reenables the disabled ports.
- The **no udld port** interface configuration command followed by the **udld port [aggressive]** interface configuration command reenables the disabled fiber-optic port.
- The **errdisable recovery cause udld** global configuration command enables the timer to automatically recover from the UDLD error-disabled state, and the **errdisable recovery interval interval** global configuration command specifies the time to recover from the UDLD error-disabled state.

The **udld port disable** command disables UDLD on fiber-optic LAN ports.



**Note** This command is only supported on fiber-optic LAN ports.

## Default UniDirectional Link Detection Configuration

*Table 15: Default UDLD Configuration*

Feature	Default Setting
UDLD global enable state	Globally disabled
UDLD per-port enable state for fiber-optic media	Disabled on all Ethernet fiber-optic ports
UDLD per-port enable state for twisted-pair (copper) media	Disabled on all Ethernet 10/100 and 1000BASE-TX p
UDLD aggressive mode	Disabled
Fast UDLD per-port enable state	Disabled on all ports

## How to Configure UDLD

The following sections provide information about configuring UDLD:

### Enabling UniDirectional Link Detection Globally

Follow these steps to enable UDLD in the aggressive or normal mode and to set the configurable message timer on all fiber-optic ports on the device.



## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>udld {aggressive   enable   message time message-timer-interval}</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>udld enable message time 10</b>	Specifies the UDLD mode of operation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>aggressive</b>—Enables UDLD in aggressive mode on all fiber-optic ports.</li> <li>• <b>enable</b>—Enables UDLD in normal mode on all fiber-optic ports on the device. UDLD is disabled by default. An individual interface configuration overrides the setting of the <b>udld enable</b> global configuration command.</li> <li>• <b>message time message-timer-interval</b>—Configures the period of time between UDLD probe messages on ports that are in the advertisement phase and are detected to be bidirectional. The range is from 1 to 90 seconds; the default value is 15.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This command affects fiber-optic ports only. Use the <b>udld</b> interface configuration command to enable UDLD on other port types.</p> <p>Use the <b>no</b> form of this command, to disable UDLD.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Enabling UniDirectional Link Detection on an Interface

Follow these steps either to enable UDLD in the aggressive or normal mode or to disable UDLD on a port.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Specifies the port to be enabled for UDLD, and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>udld port [aggressive]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>udld port aggressive</b>	UDLD is disabled by default. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>udld port</b>—Enables UDLD in normal mode on the specified port.</li> <li>• <b>udld port aggressive</b>—(Optional) Enables UDLD in aggressive mode on the specified port.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Use the <b>no udld port</b> interface configuration command to disable UDLD on a specified fiber-optic port.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Enabling Fast UniDirectional Link Detection on an Interface

Follow these steps to enable Fast UDLD on a port.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b>	Specifies the port to be enabled for Fast UDLD, and enters interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# <b>interface</b> gigabitethernet 1/0/1	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>udld fast-hello</b> <i>message time interval</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>udld fast-hello</b> 200	Enables Fast UDLD on the specified port.  • <b>message time</b> <i>message-timer-interval</i> —Configures the period of time between UDLD probe messages on ports that are in the advertisement phase and are detected to be bidirectional.  <b>Note</b> Fast UDLD can be enabled only if UDLD is already enabled on the specified port.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Enabling Fast UniDirectional Link Detection Error Reporting

Follow these steps to enable Fast UDLD error reporting on the switch.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>udld fast-hello error-reporting</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>udld fast-hello error-reporting</b>	Enables the display of console messages to report the error upon detection of a link failure.  <b>Note</b> The detected unidirectional link will not be disabled if <b>udld fast-hello error-reporting</b> has been enabled.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Disabling UniDirectional Link Detection on Fiber-Optic LAN Interfaces

To disable UDLD on Fiber-optic LAN interfaces, perform this procedure:

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface type number</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 0/1/1</b>	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>udld port disable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>udld port disable</b>	Disables UDLD on a fiber-optic LAN port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>udld port disable</b> command is only supported on fiber-optic LAN ports.</li> <li>• The <b>no udld port disable</b> command reverts to the <b>udld enable</b> global configuration command setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Monitoring and Maintaining UniDirectional Link Detection

Command	Purpose
<b>show udld</b> [ <i>interface-id</i>   <b>neighbors</b> ]	Displays the UDLD status for the specified port or for all ports.
<b>show udld fast-hello</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ]	Displays fast-hello information for the specified port or for all ports.

## Console Error Messages For Fast UniDirectional Link Detection

When a link failure is detected by fast UDLD, the unidirectional link is err-disabled by UDLD after displaying the following message on the console:

```
%UDLD-4-UDLD_PORT_DISABLED: UDLD disabled interface Hu1/0/10, unidirectional link detected
```

If the **udld fast-hello error-reporting** is configured, when fast UDLD detects a link failure, it prints the following console message instead of err-disabling the affected port:

```
%UDLD-SP-4-UDLD_PORT_FAILURE: UDLD failure reported per user request, interface Hu1/0/10,  
fast udld unidirectional link detected
```

The **udld reset** command can be used to clear the UDLD port state in both the cases.

## Additional References for UniDirectional Link Detection

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
For complete syntax and usage information for the commands used in this chapter.	See the Layer 2/3 Commands section of the <i>Command Reference (Catalyst 9600 Series Switches)</i>

## Feature History for UniDirectional Link Detection

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	UniDirectional Link Detection (UDLD)	UDLD is a Layer 2 protocol that enables devices connected through fiber-optic or twisted-pair Ethernet cables to monitor the physical configuration of the cables and detect when a unidirectional link exists.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>.





## CHAPTER 6

# Configuring IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling

- [Information About IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling, on page 123](#)
- [How to Configure IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling, on page 128](#)
- [Monitoring Tunneling Status, on page 130](#)
- [Example: Configuring an IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling Port, on page 130](#)
- [Feature History for IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling, on page 131](#)

## Information About IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling

The IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling feature is designed for service providers who carry traffic of multiple customers across their networks and are required to maintain the VLAN and Layer 2 protocol configurations of each customer without impacting the traffic of other customers.

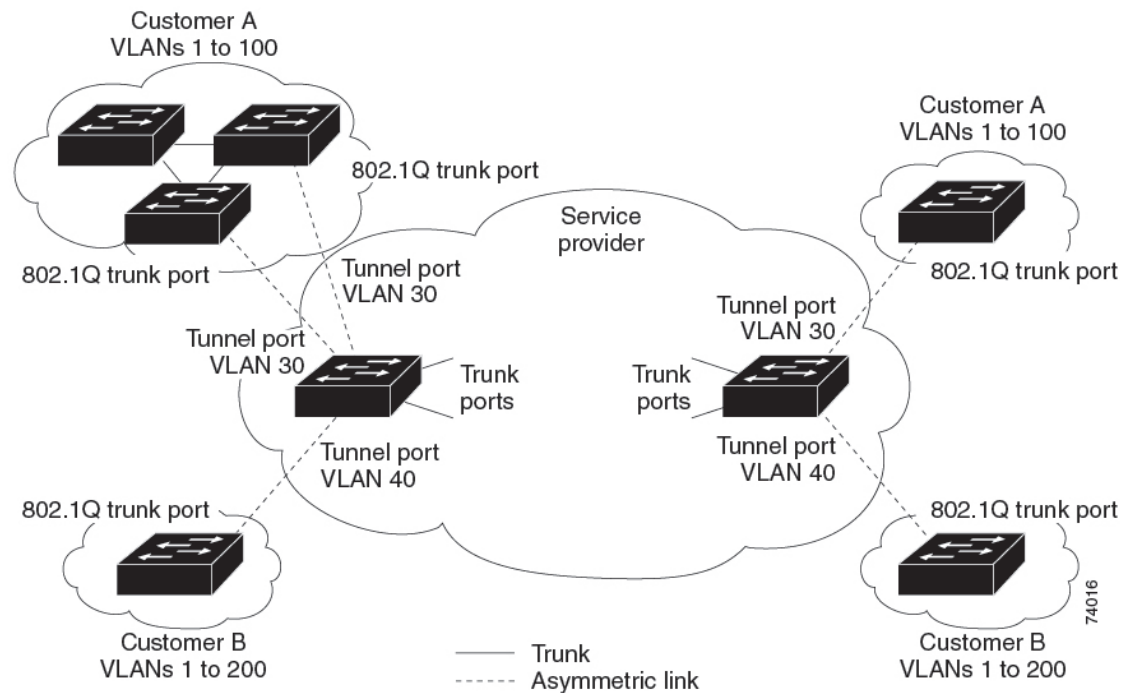
## IEEE 802.1Q Tunnel Ports in a Service Provider Network

Business customers of service providers often have specific requirements for VLAN IDs and the number of VLANs to be supported. The VLAN ranges required by different customers in the same service-provider network might overlap, and traffic of customers through the infrastructure might be mixed. Assigning a unique range of VLAN IDs to each customer would restrict customer configurations and could easily exceed the VLAN limit (4096) of the IEEE 802.1Q specification.

Using the IEEE 802.1Q tunneling feature, service providers can use a single VLAN to support customers who have multiple VLANs. Customer VLAN IDs are preserved, and traffic from different customers is segregated within the service-provider network, even when they appear to be in the same VLAN. Using IEEE 802.1Q tunneling expands VLAN space by using a VLAN-in-VLAN hierarchy and retagging the tagged packets. A port configured to support IEEE 802.1Q tunneling is called a tunnel port. When you configure tunneling, you assign a tunnel port to a VLAN ID that is dedicated to tunneling. Each customer requires a separate service-provider VLAN ID, but that VLAN ID supports all of the customer's VLANs.

Customer traffic that is tagged in the normal way with appropriate VLAN IDs comes from an IEEE 802.1Q trunk port on the customer device and into a tunnel port on the service-provider edge device. The link between the customer device and the edge device is asymmetric because one end is configured as an IEEE 802.1Q trunk port, and the other end is configured as a tunnel port. You assign the tunnel port interface to an access VLAN ID that is unique to each customer.

Figure 25: IEEE 802.1Q Tunnel Ports in a Service-Provider Network



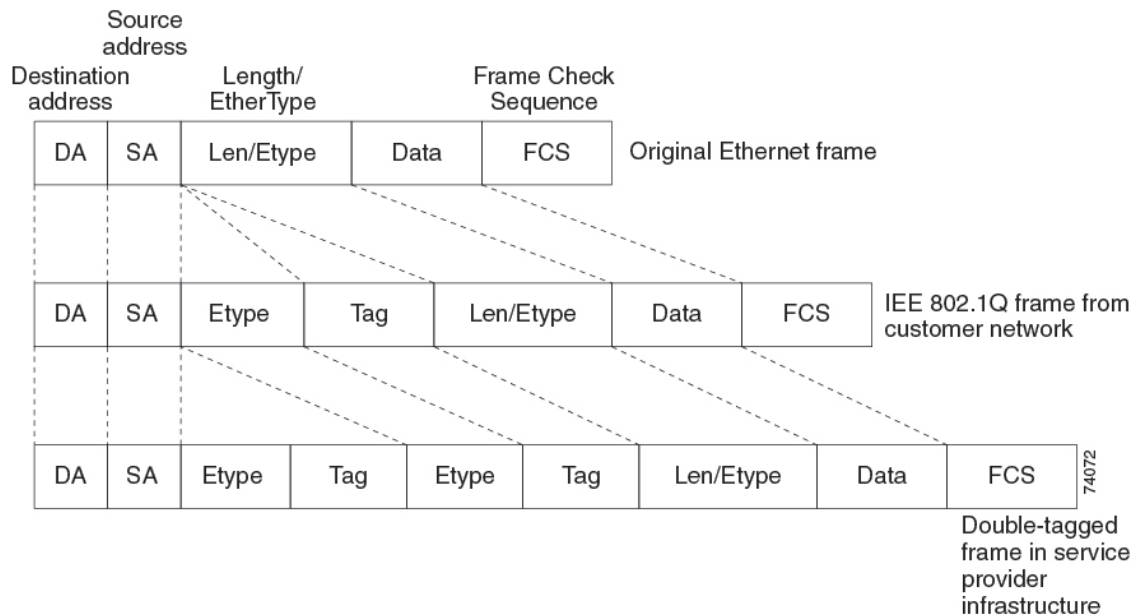
Packets coming from the customer trunk port into the tunnel port on the service-provider edge device are normally IEEE 802.1Q-tagged with the appropriate VLAN ID. The tagged packets remain intact inside the device and when they exit the trunk port into the service-provider network, they are encapsulated with another layer of an IEEE 802.1Q tag (called the metro tag) that contains the VLAN ID that is unique to the customer. The original customer IEEE 802.1Q tag is preserved in the encapsulated packet. Therefore, packets entering the service-provider network are double-tagged, with the outer (metro) tag containing the customer's access VLAN ID, and the inner VLAN ID being that of the incoming traffic.

When the double-tagged packet enters another trunk port in a service-provider core device, the outer tag is stripped as the device processes the packet. When the packet exits another trunk port on the same core device, the same metro tag is again added to the packet.



**Figure 26: Original (Normal), IEEE 802.1Q, and Double-Tagged Ethernet Packet Formats**

This figure shows the tag structures of the double-tagged packets.



When the packet enters the trunk port of the service-provider egress device, the outer tag is again stripped as the device internally processes the packet. However, the metro tag is not added when the packet is sent out the tunnel port on the edge device into the customer network. The packet is sent as a normal IEEE 802.1Q-tagged frame to preserve the original VLAN numbers in the customer network.

In the above network figure, Customer A was assigned VLAN 30, and Customer B was assigned VLAN 40. Packets entering the edge device tunnel ports with IEEE 802.1Q tags are double-tagged when they enter the service-provider network, with the outer tag containing VLAN ID 30 or 40, appropriately, and the inner tag containing the original VLAN number, for example, VLAN 100. Even if both Customers A and B have VLAN 100 in their networks, the traffic remains segregated within the service-provider network because the outer tag is different. Each customer controls its own VLAN numbering space, which is independent of the VLAN numbering space that is used by other customers and the VLAN numbering space that is used by the service-provider network.

At the outbound tunnel port, the original VLAN numbers on the customer's network are recovered. It is possible to have multiple levels of tunneling and tagging, but the device supports only one level in this release.

If traffic coming from a customer network is not tagged (native VLAN frames), these packets are bridged or routed as normal packets. All packets entering the service-provider network through a tunnel port on an edge device are treated as untagged packets, whether they are untagged or already tagged with IEEE 802.1Q headers. The packets are encapsulated with the metro tag VLAN ID (set to the access VLAN of the tunnel port) when they are sent through the service-provider network on an IEEE 802.1Q trunk port. The priority field on the metro tag is set to the interface class of service (CoS) priority configured on the tunnel port. (The default is zero if none is configured.)

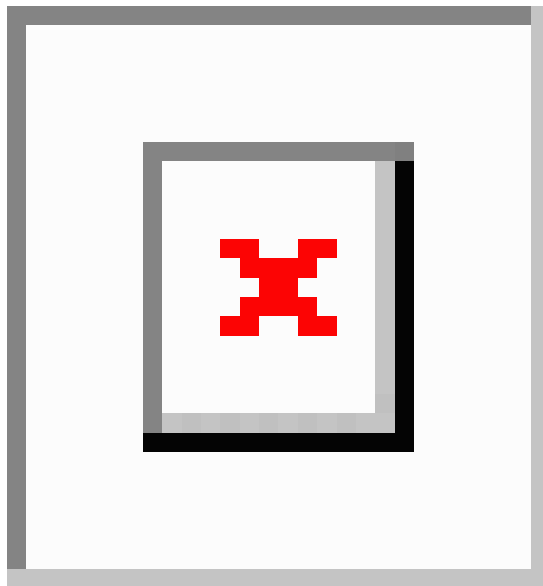
On switches, because 802.1Q tunneling is configured on a per-port basis, it does not matter whether the switch is a standalone device or a member switch. All configuration is done on the active switch.

## Native VLANs

When configuring IEEE 802.1Q tunneling on an edge device, you must use IEEE 802.1Q trunk ports for sending packets into the service-provider network. However, packets going through the core of the service-provider network can be carried through IEEE 802.1Q trunks, ISL trunks, or nontrunking links. When IEEE 802.1Q trunks are used in these core devices, the native VLANs of the IEEE 802.1Q trunks must not match any native VLAN of the nontrunking (tunneling) port on the same device because traffic on the native VLAN would not be tagged on the IEEE 802.1Q sending trunk port.

In the following network figure, VLAN 40 is configured as the native VLAN for the IEEE 802.1Q trunk port from Customer X at the ingress edge switch in the service-provider network (Switch B). Switch A of Customer X sends a tagged packet on VLAN 30 to the ingress tunnel port of Switch B in the service-provider network, which belongs to access VLAN 40. Because the access VLAN of the tunnel port (VLAN 40) is the same as the native VLAN of the edge switch trunk port (VLAN 40), the metro tag is not added to tagged packets received from the tunnel port. The packet carries only the VLAN 30 tag through the service-provider network to the trunk port of the egress-edge switch (Switch C) and is misdirected through the egress switch tunnel port to Customer Y.

**Figure 27: Potential Problems with IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling and Native VLANs**



These are some ways to solve this problem:

- Use the **switchport trunk native vlan tag** per-port command and the **vlan dot1q tag native** global configuration command to configure the edge switches so that all packets going out an IEEE 802.1Q trunk, including the native VLAN, are tagged. If the switch is configured to tag native VLAN packets on all IEEE 802.1Q trunks, the switch drops untagged packets, and sends and receives only tagged packets.



**Note** **vlan dot1q tag native** global command needs to be enabled to execute the **switchport trunk native vlan tag** command.

- Ensure that the native VLAN ID on the edge switches trunk port is not within the customer VLAN range. For example, if the trunk port carries traffic of VLANs 100 to 200, assign the native VLAN a number outside that range.

## System MTU

The default system MTU for traffic on the device is 1500 bytes.

You can configure 10-Gigabit and Gigabit Ethernet ports to support frames larger than 1500 bytes by using the **system mtu bytes** global configuration command.

The system MTU and system jumbo MTU values do not include the IEEE 802.1Q header. Because the IEEE 802.1Q tunneling feature increases the frame size by 4 bytes when the metro tag is added, you must configure all devices in the service-provider network to be able to process maximum frames by adding 4 bytes to the system MTU size.

For example, the device supports a maximum frame size of 1496 bytes with this configuration: The device has a system MTU value of 1500 bytes, and the **switchport mode dot1q tunnel** interface configuration command is configured on a 10-Gigabit or Gigabit Ethernet device port.

## IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling and Other Features

Although IEEE 802.1Q tunneling works well for Layer 2 packet switching, there are incompatibilities between some Layer 2 features and Layer 3 switching.

- A tunnel port cannot be a routed port.
- IP routing is not supported on a VLAN that includes IEEE 802.1Q tunnel ports. Packets that are received from a tunnel port are forwarded based only on Layer 2 information. If routing is enabled on a switch virtual interface (SVI) that includes tunnel ports, untagged IP packets received from the tunnel port are recognized and routed by the switch. Customers can access the Internet through its native VLAN. If this access is not needed, you should not configure SVIs on VLANs that include tunnel ports.
- Fallback bridging is not supported on tunnel ports. Because all IEEE 802.1Q-tagged packets that are received from a tunnel port are treated as non-IP packets, if fallback bridging is enabled on VLANs that have tunnel ports that are configured, IP packets would be improperly bridged across VLANs. Therefore, you must not enable fallback bridging on VLANs with tunnel ports.
- Tunnel ports do not support IP access control lists (ACLs).
- Layer 3 quality of service (QoS) ACLs and other QoS features related to Layer 3 information are not supported on tunnel ports. MAC-based QoS is supported on tunnel ports.
- EtherChannel port groups are compatible with tunnel ports as long as the IEEE 802.1Q configuration is consistent within an EtherChannel port group.
- Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP), Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP), and UniDirectional Link Detection (UDLD) are supported on IEEE 802.1Q tunnel ports.
- Dynamic Trunking Protocol (DTP) is not compatible with IEEE 802.1Q tunneling because you must manually configure asymmetric links with tunnel ports and trunk ports.
- VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) does not work between devices that are connected by an asymmetrical link or devices that communicate through a tunnel.

- Loopback detection is supported on IEEE 802.1Q tunnel ports.
- When a port is configured as an IEEE 802.1Q tunnel port, spanning-tree bridge protocol data unit (BPDU) filtering is automatically enabled on the interface. Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is automatically disabled on the interface.



**Note** When you are configuring IEEE 802.1Q tunneling, the BPDU filtering configuration information is not displayed as spanning-tree BPDU filter is automatically enabled. You can verify the BPDU filter information using the **show spanning tree interface** command.

- When an IEEE 802.1Q tunnel port is configured as SPAN source, span filter must be applied for SVLAN to avoid packet loss.
- IGMP/MLD packet forwarding can be enabled on IEEE 802.1Q tunnels. This can be done by disabling IGMP/MLD snooping on the service provider network.

## Default IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration

By default, IEEE 802.1Q tunneling is disabled because the default switchport mode is dynamic auto. Tagging of IEEE 802.1Q native VLAN packets on all IEEE 802.1Q trunk ports is also disabled.

## How to Configure IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling

Follow these steps to configure a port as an IEEE 802.1Q tunnel port:

### Before you begin

- Always use an asymmetrical link between the customer device and the edge device, with the customer device port configured as an IEEE 802.1Q trunk port and the edge device port configured as a tunnel port.
- Assign tunnel ports only to VLANs that are used for tunneling.
- Observe configuration requirements for native VLANs and for and maximum transmission units (MTUs).

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitethernet2/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode for the interface to be configured as a tunnel port. This should be the edge port in the service-provider network that connects to the customer device. Valid interfaces include physical interfaces and port-channel logical interfaces (port channels 1 to 48).
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switchport access vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport access</b> <b>vlan 2</b>	Specifies the default VLAN, which is used if the interface stops trunking. This VLAN ID is specific to the particular customer.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>switchport mode dot1q-tunnel</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport mode</b> <b>dot1q-tunnel</b>	Sets the interface as an IEEE 802.1Q tunnel port.  <b>Note</b> Use the <b>no switchport mode dot1q-tunnel</b> interface configuration command to return the port to the default state of dynamic desirable.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>vlan dot1q tag native</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>vlan dot1q tag native</b>	(Optional) Sets the device to enable tagging of native VLAN packets on all IEEE 802.1Q trunk ports. When not set, and a customer VLAN ID is the same as the native VLAN, the trunk port does not apply a metro tag, and packets could be sent to the wrong destination.  <b>Note</b> Use the <b>no vlan dot1q tag native</b> global configuration command to disable tagging of native VLAN packets.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	Use one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>show dot1q-tunnel</b></li> <li>• <b>show running-config interface</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show dot1q-tunnel</b>	Displays the ports configured for IEEE 802.1Q tunneling.  Displays the ports that are in tunnel mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	or Device# <code>show running-config interface</code>	
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show vlan dot1q tag native</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>show vlan dot1q native</code>	Displays IEEE 802.1Q native VLAN tagging status.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring Tunneling Status

The following table describes the commands used to monitor tunneling status.

*Table 16: Commands for Monitoring Tunneling*

Command	Purpose
<code>show dot1q-tunnel</code>	Displays IEEE 802.1Q tunnel ports on the device.
<code>show dot1q-tunnel interface interface-id</code>	Verifies if a specific interface is a tunnel port.
<code>show vlan dot1q tag native</code>	Displays the status of native VLAN tagging on the device.

## Example: Configuring an IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling Port

The following example shows how to configure an interface as a tunnel port, enable tagging of native VLAN packets, and verify the configuration. In this configuration, the VLAN ID for the customer connected to Gigabit Ethernet interface 7 on stack member 1 is VLAN 22.

```

Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/7
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 22
% Access VLAN does not exist. Creating vlan 22
Device(config-if)# switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# vlan dot1q tag native
Device(config)# end
Device# show dot1q-tunnel interface gigabitethernet1/0/7
Port
-----
Gi1/0/1Port
-----
Device# show vlan dot1q tag native
dot1q native vlan tagging is enabled

```

## Feature History for IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	IEEE 802.1Q Tunneling	The IEEE 802.1Q tunneling feature is designed for service providers who carry traffic of multiple customers across their networks and are required to maintain the VLAN and Layer 2 protocol configurations of each customer without impacting the traffic of other customers.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>.







## CHAPTER 7

# Configuring VLAN Mapping

- [Prerequisites for VLAN Mapping, on page 133](#)
- [About VLAN Mapping, on page 133](#)
- [Configuration Guidelines for VLAN Mapping, on page 136](#)
- [How to Configure VLAN Mapping, on page 138](#)
- [Feature History for VLAN Mapping, on page 143](#)

## Prerequisites for VLAN Mapping

- By default, no VLAN mapping is configured.
- Ensure that you run the **Network Advantage** license. VLAN Mapping is supported only with the **Network Advantage** license level.
- To process control traffic consistently, either enable Layer 2 protocol tunneling (recommended), as follows:

```
!  
Device(config)# interface HundredGigE2/0/36  
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk  
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 20 300  
Device(config-if)# l2protocol-tunnel stp  
Device(config-if)# end
```

or insert a BPDU filter for spanning tree, as follows:

```
!  
Device(config)# interface HundredGigE1/0/1  
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk  
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 10 20  
Device(config-if)# spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable  
Device(config-if)# end
```

## About VLAN Mapping

In a typical deployment of VLAN mapping, you want the service provider to provide a transparent switching infrastructure that includes customers' switches at the remote location as a part of the local site. This allows customers to use the same VLAN ID space and run Layer 2 control protocols seamlessly across the provider

network. In such scenarios, we recommend that service providers do not impose their VLAN IDs on their customers.

One way to establish translated VLAN IDs (S-VLANs) is to map customer VLANs to service-provider VLANs (called VLAN ID translation) on trunk ports connected to a customer network. Packets entering the port are mapped to a service provider VLAN (S-VLAN) based on the port number and the packet's original customer VLAN-ID (C-VLAN).

Service providers's internal assignments might conflict with a customer's VLAN. To isolate customer traffic, a service provider could decide to map a specific VLAN into another one while the traffic is in its cloud.

### Deployment Example

In the below [figure](#), the service provider provides Layer 2 VPN service to two different customers, A and B. The service provider separates the data and control traffic between the two customers and from the providers' own control traffic. The service provider network must also be transparent to the customer edge devices.



All forwarding operations on the Catalyst 9000 series switch are performed using S-VLAN and not C-VLAN information because the VLAN ID is mapped to the S-VLAN on ingress.



---

**Note** When you configure features on a port configured for VLAN mapping, you always use the S-VLAN rather than the customer VLAN-ID (C-VLAN).

---

On an interface configured for VLAN mapping, the specified C-VLAN packets are mapped to the specified S-VLAN when they enter the port. Symmetrical mapping to the customer C-VLAN occurs when packets exit the port.

The switch supports these types of VLAN mapping on trunk ports:

- One-to-one VLAN mapping.
- Selective QinQ.
- QinQ on a trunk port.

### Mapping Customer VLANs to Service-Provider VLANs

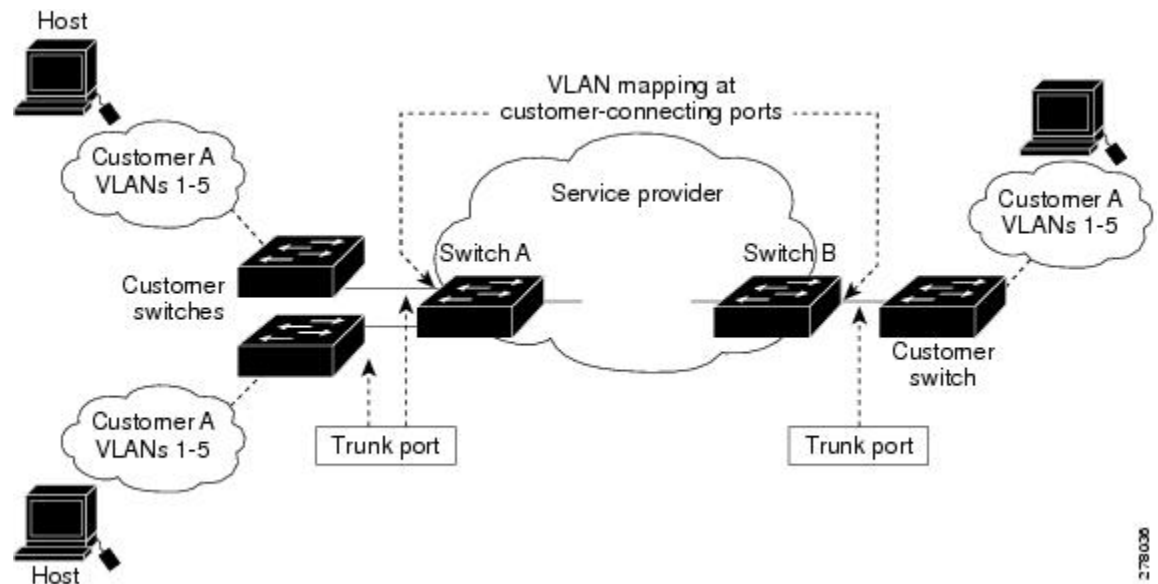


Figure shows a topology where a customer uses the same VLANs in multiple sites on different sides of a service-provider network. You map the customer VLAN IDs to service-provider VLAN IDs for packet travel across the service-provider backbone. The customer VLAN IDs are retrieved at the other side of the service-provider backbone for use in the other customer site. Configure the same set of VLAN mappings at a customer-connected port on each side of the service-provider network.

## One-to-One VLAN Mapping

One-to-one VLAN mapping occurs at the ingress and egress of the port and maps the customer C-VLAN ID in the 802.1Q tag to the service-provider S-VLAN ID. Packets with VLAN IDs other than the ones with configured VLAN mapping are forwarded as normal traffic.

## Selective Q-in-Q

Selective QinQ maps the specified customer VLANs entering the UNI to the specified S-VLAN ID. The S-VLAN ID is added to the incoming unmodified C-VLAN and the packet travels the service provider network double-tagged. At the egress, the S-VLAN ID is removed and the customer VLAN-ID is retained on the packet. By default, packets that do not match the specified customer VLANs are dropped.

## Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port

QinQ on a trunk port maps all the customer VLANs entering the UNI to the specified S-VLAN ID. Similar to Selective QinQ, the packet is double-tagged and at the egress, the S-VLAN ID is removed.

# Configuration Guidelines for VLAN Mapping



## Note

- By default, no VLAN mapping is configured.

Guidelines include the following:

- If the VLAN mapping is enabled on an EtherChannel, the configuration does not apply to all member ports of the EtherChannel bundle and applies only to the EtherChannel interface.
- If VLAN mapping is enabled on an EtherChannel and a conflicting mapping translation is enabled on a member port, the configuration is rejected on the member port.
- If a port with VLAN mapping is configured as a part of EtherChannel with a conflicting mapping translation, the port cannot be a member of the port-channel.
- The member port of an EtherChannel is suspended from the EtherChannel bundle if the mode of the port is changed to anything other than 'trunk' mode.
- To process control traffic consistently, either enable Layer 2 protocol tunneling (recommended), as follows:

```
!
Device(config)# interface HundredGigE1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 20 300
Device(config-if)# l2protocol-tunnel stp
Device(config-if)# end

Device(config)# interface HundredGigE2/0/36
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 10 20
Device(config-if)# spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable
Device(config-if)# end
```

or insert a BPDU filter for spanning tree, as follows:

```
!
Device(config)# interface HundredGigE1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 10 20
Device(config-if)# spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable
Device(config-if)# end
```

- Default native VLANs, user-configured native VLANs, and reserved VLANs (range 1002-1005) cannot be used for VLAN mapping.
- The S-VLAN used for VLAN mapping cannot be a part of any other Layer 3 configurations like EVPN or LISP.
- PVLAN support is not available when VLAN mapping is configured.

## Configuration Guidelines for One-to-One VLAN Mapping

- One-to-One VLAN mapping can be configured only on trunk ports and not on dynamic trunk.

- One-to-One VLAN mapping should be identical on both ports.
- S-VLAN should be created and present in the allowed VLAN list of the trunk port where One-to-One VLAN mapping is configured.
- When One-to-One VLAN mapping is configured, multiple C-VLANs cannot be mapped to the same S-VLAN.
- Merging of C-VLAN and S-VLAN spanning-tree topology is not supported in case of one-to-one VLAN mapping.

## Configuration Guidelines for Selective Q-in-Q

- S-VLAN should be created and present in the allowed VLAN list of the trunk port where Selective Q-in-Q is configured.
- When Selective Q-in-Q is configured, the device supports Layer 2 protocol tunneling for CDP, STP, LLDP, and VTP. For emulated point-to-point network topologies, it also supports PAgP, LACP, and UDLD protocols.
- IP routing is not supported on Selective Q-in-Q enabled ports.
- IPSG is not supported on Selective Q-in-Q enabled ports.
- The tagging of native VLAN packets and selective QinQ ports is mutually exclusive and cannot be supported together on the same port. If the native VLAN tagging global command is enabled on the switch, you should disable the tagging of native VLAN packets on selective QinQ enabled ports using the command **no switchport trunk native vlan tag** command.

## Configuration Guidelines for Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port

- S-VLAN should be created and present in the allowed VLAN list of the trunk port where Q-in-Q on a trunk port is configured.
- When Q-in-Q on a trunk port is configured, the device supports Layer 2 protocol tunneling for CDP, STP, LLDP, and VTP. For emulated point-to-point network topologies, it also supports PAgP, LACP, and UDLD protocols.
- Ingress and egress SPAN, and RSPAN are supported on trunk ports with QinQ enabled.
- When QinQ is enabled, the SPAN filtering can be enabled to monitor only the traffic on the mapped VLAN, i.e. S-VLANs.
- IGMP snooping is not supported on the C-VLAN.
- The tagging of native VLAN packets and QinQ on a trunk port are mutually exclusive and cannot be supported together on the same port. If the native VLAN tagging global command is enabled on the switch, you should disable the tagging of native VLAN packets on the QinQ enabled trunk ports using the command **no switchport trunk native vlan tag** command.

# How to Configure VLAN Mapping

The following sections provide information about configuring VLAN mapping:

## One-to-One VLAN Mapping



**Note** VLAN Mapping is supported only with the **network-advantage** license level.

To configure one-to-one VLAN mapping to map a customer VLAN ID to a service-provider VLAN ID, perform this task:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitethernet1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode for the interface that is connected to the service-provider network. You can enter a physical interface or an EtherChannel port channel.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switchport mode trunk</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Configures the interface as a trunk port.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>switchport vlan mapping <i>vlan-id</i> <i>translated-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport vlan</b> <b>mapping 2 102</b>	Enters the VLAN IDs to be mapped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>vlan-id</i> —the customer VLAN ID (C-VLAN) entering the switch from the customer network. The range is from 1 to 4094.</li> <li>• <i>translated-id</i> —the assigned service-provider VLAN ID (S-VLAN). The range is from 1 to 4094.</li> </ul> By default, the packets with VLAN IDs other than the ones with configured VLAN mapping are forwarded as normal traffic.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable</b>	Inserts a BPDU filter for spanning tree.  <b>Note</b> To process control traffic consistently, either enable Layer 2 protocol tunneling (recommended) or insert a BPDU filter for spanning tree.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show vlan mapping</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show vlan mapping</b>	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

### Example

Use **no switchport vlan mapping** command to remove the VLAN mapping information. Entering **no switchport vlan mapping all** command deletes all mapping configurations.

This example shows how to map VLAN IDs 2 to 6 in the customer network to VLANs 101 to 105 in the service-provider network (Figure 3-5). You configure the same VLAN mapping commands for a port in Switch A and Switch B; the traffic on all other VLAN IDs is forwarded as normal traffic.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 2 101
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 3 102
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 4 103
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 5 104
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 6 105
Device(config-if)# exit
```

In the previous example, at the ingress of the service-provider network, VLAN IDs 2 to 6 in the customer network are mapped to VLANs 101 to 105, in the service provider network. At the egress of the service provider network, VLANs 101 to 105 in the service provider network are mapped to VLAN IDs 2 to 6, in the customer network.



**Note** Packets with VLAN IDs other than the ones with configured VLAN Mapping are forwarded as normal traffic.

Use **show vlan mapping** command to view information about configured vlans.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# show vlan mapping
Total no of vlan mappings configured: 1
Interface Po5:
VLANs on wire          Translated      VLAN Operation
-----
20                      30           1-to-1
```

## Selective Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port

To configure VLAN mapping for selective Q-in-Q on a trunk port, perform this task:



**Note** You cannot configure one-to-one mapping and selective Q-in-Q on the same interface.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitethernet1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode for the interface that is connected to the service-provider network. You can enter a physical interface or an EtherChannel port channel.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switchport mode trunk</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Configures the interface as a trunk port.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>switchport vlan mapping vlan-id</b> <b>dot1q-tunnel outer vlan-id</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Enters the VLAN IDs to be mapped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>vlan-id —the customer VLAN ID (C-VLAN) entering the switch from the customer network. The range is from 1</li> </ul>



	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 16 dot1q-tunnel 64</pre>	<p>to 4094. You can enter a string of VLAN-IDs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>outer-vlan-id —The outer VLAN ID (S-VLAN) of the service provider network. The range is from 1 to 4094.</li> </ul> <p>Use the no form of this command to remove the VLAN mapping configuration. Entering the <b>no switchport vlan mapping all</b> command deletes all mapping configurations.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>switchport vlan mapping default dot1q-tunnel <i>vlan-id</i></b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping default dot1q-tunnel 22</pre>	<p>Specifies that all unmapped packets on the port are forwarded with the specified S-VLAN.</p> <p>By default, packets that do not match the mapped VLANs, are dropped.</p> <p>Untagged traffic are forwarded without dropping.</p>
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>exit</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-if)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config)# spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable</pre>	<p>Inserts a BPDU filter for spanning tree.</p> <p><b>Note</b> To process control traffic consistently, either enable Layer 2 protocol tunneling (recommended) or insert a BPDU filter for spanning tree.</p>
<b>Step 9</b>	<p><b>end</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<p><b>show interfaces <i>interface-id</i> vlan mapping</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# show interfaces gigabitethernet1/0/1 vlan mapping</pre>	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 11</b>	<p><b>copy running-config startup-config</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

### Example

This example shows how to configure selective QinQ mapping on the port so that traffic with a C-VLAN ID of 2 to 5 enters the switch with an S-VLAN ID of 100. By default, the traffic of any other VLAN ID is dropped.

```
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 2-5 dot1q-tunnel 100
Device(config-if)# exit
```

This example shows how to configure selective QinQ mapping on the port so that traffic with a C-VLAN ID of 2 to 5 enters the switch with an S-VLAN ID of 100. The traffic of any other VLAN ID is forwarded with the S-VLAN ID of 200.

```
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping 2-5 dot1q-tunnel 100
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping default dot1q-tunnel 200
Device(config-if)# exit
```

```
Device# show vlan mapping
Total no of vlan mappings configured: 5
Interface Hu1/0/50:
VLANs on wire          Translated VLAN    Operation
-----
2-5                    100                selective QinQ
*                      200                default QinQ
```

## Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port

To configure VLAN mapping for Q-in-Q on a trunk port, perform this task:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode for the interface that is connected to the service-provider network. You can enter a physical interface or an EtherChannel port channel.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switchport mode trunk</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Configures the interface as a trunk port.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>switchport vlan mapping default dot1q-tunnel <i>vlan-id</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport vlan mapping default dot1q-tunnel 16</b>	Specifies that all unmapped C-VLAN packets on the port are forwarded with the specified S-VLAN.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable</b>	Inserts a BPDU filter for spanning tree.  <b>Note</b> To process control traffic consistently, either enable Layer 2 protocol tunneling (recommended) or insert a BPDU filter for spanning tree.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show interfaces <i>interface-id</i> vlan mapping</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show interfaces gigabitethernet1/0/1 vlan mapping</b>	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

### Example

This example shows how to configure QinQ mapping on the port so that traffic of any VLAN ID is forwarded with the S-VLAN ID of 200.

```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport vlan mapping default dot1q-tunnel 200
Device(config-if)# exit
```

## Feature History for VLAN Mapping

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	One-to-One VLAN mapping	One-to-One VLAN mapping allows to map customer VLANs to service-provider VLANs on trunk ports connected to a customer network.
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	Selective Q-in-Q	Support on selective Q-in-Q was introduced
	Q-in-Q on a Trunk Port	Support on Q-in-Q on a trunk port was introduced

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>.



## CHAPTER 8

# Configuring VXLAN BGP EVPN

The following sections provide information about configuring VXLAN BGP EVPN:

- [Guidelines and Limitations for VXLAN BGP EVPN, on page 145](#)
- [Information About VXLAN BGP EVPN, on page 146](#)
- [Considerations for VXLAN BGP EVPN deployment, on page 146](#)
- [How to Configure VXLAN BGP EVPN, on page 149](#)
- [Configuration Examples for VXLAN BGP EVPN \(EBGP\), on page 165](#)
- [Feature History and Information for VXLAN BGP EVPN, on page 180](#)

## Guidelines and Limitations for VXLAN BGP EVPN

The following are the limitations for Virtual Extensible LAN (VXLAN) Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) Ethernet VPN (EVPN) has the following:

- Multicast over VXLAN is currently not supported.
- show commands with the keyword **internal** are not supported.
- For EBGp, it is recommended to use a single overlay EBGp EVPN session between loopbacks.
- Bind NVE to a loopback address that is separate from other loopback addresses that are required by Layer 3 protocols. A best practice is to use a dedicated loopback address for VXLAN.
- VXLAN BGP EVPN does not support an NVE interface in a non-default VRF.
- It is recommended to configure a single BGP session over the loopback for an overlay BGP session.
- The VXLAN UDP port number is used for VXLAN encapsulation. It complies with IETF standards and is not configurable.
- VXLAN BGP EVPN currently supports only leaf switch functionality. Spine switch functionality is not supported.
- Support is not available for any integrated underlay technologies such as route-reflector, or anycast rendezvous point , or Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP) rendezvous point.
- Border leaf functionality and interworking between BGP EVPN and traditional Layer 3 and Layer 2 overlay networks are not supported.
- Auto route-distinguisher and auto route-target for IP VRF is not supported

- Centralized Gateway for Layer 2 VXLAN network identifier (L2VNI) is not supported.
- BGP EVPN Network Virtualization Overlay MIB is not supported.
- In EVPN deployments, once a VLAN is used for a core-facing SVI, it should not be allowed in any trunk. For a core-facing SVI to function properly, the **no autostate** command must be configured under the SVI.

## Information About VXLAN BGP EVPN

VXLAN is a MAC in IP/UDP overlay that allows layer 2 segments to be stretched across an IP core. All the benefits of layer 3 topologies are thereby available with VXLAN. The encapsulation and decapsulation of VXLAN headers is handled by a functionality embedded in VXLAN Tunnel End Points (VTEPs). VTEPs themselves could be implemented in software or a hardware form-factor.

VXLAN natively operates on a flood-n-learn mechanism where BU (Broadcast, Unknown Unicast) traffic and Layer 2 Multicast traffic in a given VXLAN network is sent over the IP core to every VTEP that has membership in that network. IP multicast is used to send traffic over the network. The receiving VTEPs decapsulate the packet, and based on the inner frame perform layer-2 MAC learning. The inner SMAC is learnt against the outer Source IP Address (SIP) corresponding to the source VTEP. In this way, reverse traffic can be unicasted toward the previously learnt end host.

Motivations for using an overlay architecture include:

- Scalability — VXLAN provides Layer-2 connectivity that allows the infrastructure that can scale to 16 million tenant networks. It overcomes the 4094-segment limitation of VLANs. This is necessary to address today's multi-tenant cloud requirements.
- Flexibility — VXLAN allows workloads to be placed anywhere, along with the traffic separation required in a multi-tenant environment. The traffic separation is done using network segmentation (segment IDs or virtual network identifiers [VNIs]). Workloads for a tenant can be distributed across different physical devices (since workloads are added as the need arises, into available server space) but the workloads are identified by the same layer 2 or layer 3 VNI as the case may be.
- Mobility — VMs can be moved from one data center location to another without updating spine switch tables. This is because entities within the same tenant network in a VXLAN/EVPN fabric setup retain the same segment ID, regardless of their location.

One of the biggest limitations of VXLAN flood-n-learn is the inherent flooding that is required ensuring that learning happens at the VTEPs. In a traditional deployment, a layer-2 segment is represented with a VLAN that comprises a broadcast domain, which also scopes BU traffic. With VXLAN, now the layer-2 segment spans a much larger boundary across an IP core where floods are translated to IP multicast (or HER). Consequently, the flood-n-learn based scheme presents serious scale challenges especially as the number of end hosts go up. This is addressed via learning using a control-plane for distribution of end host addresses. The control plane of choice is BGP EVPN.

## Considerations for VXLAN BGP EVPN deployment

The following considerations need to be taken into account for VXLAN BGP EVPN deployment:

- A loopback address is required when using the source-interface config command. The loopback address represents the local VTEP IP.
- To establish IP multicast routing in the core, IP multicast configuration, PIM configuration, and RP configuration are required.
- VTEP to VTEP unicast reachability can be configured through any IGP/BGP protocol.
- If the anycast gateway feature is enabled for a specific VNI, then the anycast gateway feature must be enabled on all VTEPs that have that VNI configured. Having the anycast gateway feature configured on only some of the VTEPs enabled for a specific VNI is not supported.
- It is a requirement when changing the primary or secondary IP address of the NVE source interfaces to shut the NVE interface before changing the IP address.
- As a best practice, the RP for the multicast group should be configured only on the spine layer. Use the anycast RP for RP load balancing and redundancy.
- Every tenant VRF needs a VRF overlay, VLAN and SVI for VXLAN routing.
- The following considerations need to be taken into account with eBGP use case:
  - Manual configuration of the Route Targets (RT) is required. RT must be matching between the VTEPs for a given EVPN instance (EVI).
  - The **retain route-target all** BGP knob must be enabled on the Spine nodes under BGP routing process
  - The **set ip next-hop unchanged** BGP knob must be enabled on Spine nodes to set next hop for EVPN routes to the proper VTEP node.
  - Peering between VTEPs can be achieved to multiple Spine nodes to achieve redundancy.
- Ensure the following to create a proper VLAN database:
  - The route targets with eBGP EVPN VxLAN design model cannot be auto generated like in iBGP/IGP model, hence they need to be manually configured for each EVPN instance (EVI) and should be matching for a given EVI. Failure to manually configure route target will result in loss of connectivity and improper operation due to routes not being installed.
  - To ensure proper operation of EVPN VXLAN, assign the vlan first as an access interface to create the vlan and store it in the vlan.dat file. For a trunk interface, trying to create a SVI before creating the vlan in VLAN.dat will put the SVI in a down state.
- In case of a scoped configuration, not all L2 VNIs need to be enabled on all VTEP switches. They will only be enabled as needed on a given VTEP.
- Route Distinguishers (RD) need to be unique per IP VRF (L3 VNI). Route Targets (RT) must match for a given IP VRF (L3 VNI) . There is no auto-generation neither for RD or RT for the case of IP VRF (L3 VNI).
- All VTEP switches need not be configured with same L2 VNIs unless in the scoped configuration. Access VLANs are the VLANs connected to hosts. Access SVIs must have an IP address with the same subnet as the hosts the VLAN is connected to. For AnyCast Gateway support, Access SVIs of the same VLAN should have the same IP and MAC addresses in all VTEPs.

- It is important to configure additional L3 VNIs on all VTEP nodes where Inter-VxLAN communication is needed.

## Network considerations for VXLAN deployments

The following network consideration need to be taken into account for VXLAN deployments:

### MTU Size in the Transport Network

Due to the MAC-to-UDP encapsulation, VXLAN introduces 50-byte overhead to the original frames. Therefore, the maximum transmission unit (MTU) in the transport network needs to be increased by 50 bytes. If the overlays use a 1500-byte MTU, the transport network needs to be configured to accommodate 1550-byte packets at a minimum. Jumbo-frame support in the transport network is required if the overlay applications tend to use larger frame sizes than 1500 bytes.

### ECMP and LACP Hashing Algorithms in the Transport Network

Switches introduce a level of entropy in the source UDP port for ECMP and LACP hashing in the transport network. As a way to augment this implementation, the transport network uses an ECMP or LACP hashing algorithm that takes the UDP source port as an input for hashing, which achieves the best load-sharing results for VXLAN encapsulated traffic.

### Multicast Group Scaling

The VXLAN implementation uses multicast tunnels for broadcast, unknown unicast, and multicast traffic forwarding. Ideally, one VXLAN segment mapping to one IP multicast group is the way to provide the optimal multicast forwarding. It is possible, however, to have multiple VXLAN segments share a single IP multicast group in the core network. VXLAN can support up to 16 million logical Layer 2 segments, using the 24-bit VNID field in the header. With one-to-one mapping between VXLAN segments and IP multicast groups, an increase in the number of VXLAN segments causes a parallel increase in the required multicast address space and the amount of forwarding states on the core network devices. At some point, multicast scalability in the transport network can become a concern. In this case, mapping multiple VXLAN segments to a single multicast group can help conserve multicast control plane resources on the core devices and achieve the desired VXLAN scalability. However, this mapping comes at the cost of suboptimal multicast forwarding. Packets forwarded to the multicast group for one tenant are now sent to the VTEPs of other tenants that are sharing the same multicast group. This causes inefficient utilization of multicast data plane resources. Therefore, this solution is a trade-off between control plane scalability and data plane efficiency.

Despite the suboptimal multicast replication and forwarding, having multiple-tenant VXLAN networks to share a multicast group does not bring any implications to the Layer 2 isolation between the tenant networks. After receiving an encapsulated packet from the multicast group, a VTEP checks and validates the VNID in the VXLAN header of the packet. The VTEP discards the packet if the VNID is unknown to it. Only when the VNID matches one of the VTEP's local VXLAN VNIDs, does it forward the packet to that VXLAN segment. Other tenant networks will not receive the packet. Thus, the segregation between VXLAN segments is not compromised.

## Considerations for the Transport Network

The following considerations need to be taken into account for the configuration of the transport network:

- On the VTEP device:



- Enable and configure IP multicast.
- Create and configure a loopback interface with a /32 IP address.
- Enable IP multicast on the loopback interface.
- Advertise the loopback interface /32 addresses through the routing protocol (static route) that runs in the transport network.
- Enable IP multicast on the uplink outgoing physical interface.
- Throughout the transport network:
  - Enable and configure IP multicast.

## How to Configure VXLAN BGP EVPN

This section provides information about how to configure VXLAN BGP EVPN:

### Configuring VxLAN BGP EVPN in Bridge Mode

This section provides information on how to configure VxLAN BGP EVPN in bridge mode:

### Configuring Underlay Transport (Unicast and Multicast) between the VTEPs and the Spines

Follow these steps to configure underlay transport on the Spine:



**Note** This configuration is applicable to Cisco Nexus Series Switches and is not applicable to Cisco Catalyst 9000 Family Switches.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip pim rp-address <i>rp-address</i> group-list <i>prefix</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip pim rp-address 100.1.1.1 group-list 239.0.0.0/8</b>	Configures a PIM static route processor (RP) address for a multicast group range and specifies a group range for a static RP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip pim rp-candidate loopback <i>if_number</i> group-list <i>prefix</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip pim rp-candidate loopback1 group-list 239.0.0.0/8</b>	Configures a PIM address as a RP candidate. Specifies the loopback interface. Specifies a group range handled by the RP.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip pim ssm range <i>groups</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip pim ssm range 232.0.0.0/8</b>	Configures a group range for SSM.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip pim anycast-rp <i>rp-address</i> anycast-rp-peer-address</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip pim anycast-rp 100.1.1.1 10.1.1.1</b>	Configures PIM Anycast-RP peer for the specified Anycast-RP address.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>interface loopback <i>number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface loopback0</b>	Creates a loopback interface and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip address <i>ip address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip address 10.1.1.1/32</b>	Defines the IP address for an interface.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>ip pim sparse-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip pim sparse-mode</b>	Enables Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) sparse mode on an interface.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>interface port-channel <i>channel-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface port-channel11</b>	Specifies the port-channel interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>mtu <i>bytes</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>mtu 9198</b>	Sets the interface MTU size.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>medium p2p</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>medium p2p</b>	Configures the interface medium as point to point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address mask</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>ip address</b> 10.10.1.1/30	Defines the IP address for an interface.
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>ip pim sparse-mode</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>ip pim sparse-mode</b>	Enables Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) sparse mode on an interface.
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode.

## Configuring the VTEP

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip multicast-routing</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ip multicast-routing</b>	Enables IP multicast routing.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip pim rp-address</b> <i>rp-address</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ip pim rp-address</b> 100.1.1.1	Configures a PIM static route processor (RP) address for a multicast group range. The rp address used in this step should be the same one used on the spine.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip routing</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ip routing</b>	Enables routing on the switch. Even if IP routing was previously enabled, this step ensures that it is activated.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>interface loopback</b> <i>number</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>interface Loopback0</b>	Creates a loopback interface and enters interface configuration mode. This loopback interface is assigned to the NVE interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip address</b> <i>ip address</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> 10.11.11.11 255.255.255.255	Defines the IP address for an interface.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip pim sparse-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip pim sparse-mode</b>	Enables Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) sparse mode on an interface.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>interface loopback</b> <i>number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface Loopback2</b>	Creates a loopback interface and enters interface configuration mode. This loopback interface is assigned to the L3 VNI.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>ip vrf forwarding</b> <i>vrf name</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>vrf forwarding</b> tenant_1	Associates the VRF with the Layer 3 interface.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>ip address</b> <i>ip address</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> 11.11.11.11 255.255.255.255	Defines the IP address for an interface.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>interface tengigabitethernet</b> <i>slot/port</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> TenGigabitEthernet1/1/2	Selects the port to configure.
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>no switchport</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>no switchport</b>	Makes the interface Layer 3 capable.
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>no ip address</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>no ip address</b>	Disables IP processing on a particular interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 17</b>	<b>channel-group</b> <i>number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>channel-group 1 mode active</b>	Assigns and configure a physical interface to an EtherChannel.
<b>Step 18</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode

## Configuring eBGP on the Spine

Follow these steps to configure eBGP with EVPN address family on the Spine:



**Note** This configuration is applicable to Cisco Nexus Series Switches and is not applicable to Cisco Catalyst 9000 Family Switches.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip prefix-list</b> <i>name</i> [ <i>seq number</i> ] { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } <i>prefix</i> [ <i>eq length</i> ]   [ <i>ge length</i> ]   [ <i>le length</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ip prefix-list lo_prefix seq 5 permit 0.0.0.0/0 le 32</b>	Creates a prefix list to match IP packets or routes against.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>route-map</b> <i>name</i> { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } [ <i>sequence-number</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>route-map NH-UNCHANGED permit 10</b>	Creates the route map entry. Enters route-map configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>set ip next-hop unchanged</b> <b>Example:</b>	Defines the route-map and applies outbound policy for neighbour.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (config-route-map) # <b>set ip next-hop unchanged</b>	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-route-map) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the route-map configuration mode
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>route-map name {permit   deny} [sequence number]</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config) # <b>route-map any_prefix permit 10</b>	Creates the route map entry. Enters route-map configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>match ip address prefix-list name [name]</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-route-map) # <b>match ip address prefix-list lo_prefix</b>	Matches against one or more ip address prefix lists.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-route-map) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the route-map configuration mode
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>router bgp number</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config) # <b>router bgp 1</b>	Configures BGP.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>router id {router id}</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router) # <b>router-id 10.1.1.1</b>	Specifies a fixed router ID in the router configuration mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>bgp log-neighbor-changes</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router) # <b>log-neighbor-changes</b>	Enables the generation of logging messages generated when the status of a BGP neighbor changes.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>address-family ipv4 unicast</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router) # <b>address-family ipv4 unicast</b>	Enters address family configuration mode and Specifies IP Version 4 unicast address prefixes.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>redistribute direct [route-map map-name]</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router-af) # <b>redistribute direct route-map any_prefix</b>	Distributes routes that are directly connected on an interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the address family configuration mode
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>address-family l2vpn evpn</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>address-family l2vpn evpn</b>	Specifies the L2VPN address family and enters address family configuration mode. The evpn keyword specifies that EVPN endpoint provisioning information is to be distributed to BGP peers.
<b>Step 17</b>	<b>nexthop route-map name</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>nexthop route-map NH-UNCHANGED</b>	Specifies that Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) routes are resolved using only the next hops that have routes that match specific characteristics.
<b>Step 18</b>	<b>retain route-target all</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>retain route-target all</b>	Accepts received updates with specified route targets.
<b>Step 19</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the address family configuration mode
<b>Step 20</b>	<b>neighbor vtep1 loopback address remote-as number</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>neighbor 10.11.11.11 remote-as 2</b>	Adds an entry to the BGP or multiprotocol BGP neighbor table in the router configuration mode.
<b>Step 21</b>	<b>neighbor ip-address update-source interface-type interface-number</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>neighbor 10.11.11.11 update-source loopback0</b>	Allows BGP sessions to use any operational interface for TCP connections.
<b>Step 22</b>	<b>neighbor {ip address   peer-group-name} ebgp-multihop [ttl]</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>neighbor 10.11.11.11 ebgp-multihop 10</b>	Allows BGP connections to external peers on networks that are not directly connected.
<b>Step 23</b>	<b>address-family ipv4 unicast</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>address-family ipv4 unicast</b>	Enters address family configuration mode and Specifies IP Version 4 unicast address prefixes.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 24</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>send-community both</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>neighbor</b> 10.11.11.11 <b>send-community both</b>	Specifies both standard and extended communities attribute should be sent to a BGP neighbour.
<b>Step 25</b>	<b>soft-reconfiguration inbound</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>soft-reconfiguration inbound</b>	Configures the switch software to start storing BGP peer updates.
<b>Step 26</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the address family configuration mode
<b>Step 27</b>	<b>address-family l2vpn evpn</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>address-family</b> l2vpn evpn	Specifies the L2VPN address family and enters address family configuration mode. The evpn keyword specifies that EVPN endpoint provisioning information is to be distributed to BGP peers.
<b>Step 28</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>send-community both</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>neighbor</b> 10.11.11.11 <b>send-community both</b>	Specifies both standard and extended communities attribute should be sent to a BGP neighbour.
<b>Step 29</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>neighbor</b> 10.11.11.11 <b>route-map</b> NH-UNCHANGED <b>out</b>	Applies the inbound route map to routes received from the specified neighbor, or applies an outbound route map to routes advertised to the specified neighbor.
<b>Step 30</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the address family configuration mode

## Configuring eBGP on the VTEP

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp <i>number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config)# <b>router bgp 2</b>	Configures BGP.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bgp router-id interface <i>loopback address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router)# <b>bgp router-id interface Loopback0</b>	Specifies loopback address as router address.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>bgp log-neighbor-changes</b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router)# <b>bgp log-neighbor-changes</b>	Enables the generation of logging messages generated when the status of a BGP neighbor changes.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>bgp graceful-restart</b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router)# <b>bgp graceful-restart</b>	Enables the BGP graceful restart capability for a BGP neighbor.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>neighbor <i>spine 1 loopback address</i> remote-as <i>number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router)# <b>neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 1</b>	Defines MP-BGP neighbors. Under each neighbor define l2vpn evpn.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>neighbor {<i>ip address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>} ebgp-multihop [<i>ttl</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router)# <b>neighbor 10.1.1.1 ebgp-multihop 10</b>	Allows BGP connections to external peers on networks that are not directly connected.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>neighbor {<i>ip address</i>   <i>group-name</i>} update-source <i>interface</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router)# <b>neighbor 10.1.1.1 update-source Loopback0</b>	Configures update source. Update source can be configured per neighbor or per peer-group
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>address-family ipv4</b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config-router)# <b>address-family ipv4</b>	Enters address family configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>redistribute connected</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>redistribute connected</b>	Redistributes connected routes from another routing protocol.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>neighbor ip-address activate</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>neighbor 10.1.1.1 activate</b>	Enables the exchange information from a bgp neighbor
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>exit-address-family</b>	Exits the address family configuration mode
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>address-family l2vpn evpn</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>address-family l2vpn evpn</b>	Specifies the L2VPN address family and enters address family configuration mode.
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>neighbor ip-address activate</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>neighbor 10.1.1.1 activate</b>	Enables the exchange information from a bgp neighbor
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>neighbor ip-address send-community both</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>neighbor 10.1.1.1 send-community both</b>	Specifies the communities attribute sent to a bgp neighbor
<b>Step 17</b>	<b>maximum-paths number-of-paths</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>maximum-paths 2</b>	Controls the maximum number of parallel routes an IP routing protocol can support.
<b>Step 18</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>exit-address-family</b>	Exits the address family configuration mode
<b>Step 19</b>	<b>address-family ipv4 vrf vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>address-family ipv4 vrf tenant_1</b>	Specifies the name of the VRF instance to associate with subsequent address family configuration mode commands.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 20</b>	<b>advertise l2vpn evpn</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>advertise l2vpn evpn</b>	Advertises (L2VPN) EVPN routes within a tenant VRF in a VXLAN EVPN fabric.
<b>Step 21</b>	<b>redistribute connected</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>redistribute connected</b>	Redistributes connected routes from another routing protocol.
<b>Step 22</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>exit-address-family</b>	Exits the address family configuration mode

## Configuring the NVE Interface and VNIs

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface nve-interface</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>interface nve1</b>	Configures the NVE interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>no ip address</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>no ip address</b>	Disables IP processing on the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>source-interface loopback number</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>source-interface Loopback1</b>	Creates a loopback interface.  <b>Note</b> This interface will be a different loopback from the loopback interface used for underlay.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>host-reachability protocol bgp</b> <b>Example:</b>	Defines BGP as the mechanism for host reachability advertisement.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (config-if) # <b>host-reachability protocol bgp</b>	
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>member vni vni associate-vrf</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if) # <b>member vni 11001 mcast-group 239.0.1.1</b>	Adds Layer-3 VNIs, one per tenant VRF, to the overlay.  <b>Note</b> Required for VXLAN routing only.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>member vni vni mcast-group address</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-if) # <b>member vni 900001 vrf tenant_1</b>	Adds Layer 2 VNIs to the tunnel interface and assigns a multicast group to the VNIs.

## Configuring L2VPN EVPN on all VTEPs

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>l2vpn evpn</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config) # <b>l2vpn evpn</b>	Enters L2VPN configuration mode
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>replication-type static</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-l2vpn) # <b>replication-type static</b>	Suppresses use of Inclusive Multicast Ethernet Tag (IMET) routes. IP Multicast is used for BUM traffic.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>router-id loopback number</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-l2vpn) # <b>router-id Loopback1</b>	Specifies the interface that will supply the IP addresses to be used in auto-generating route distinguishers.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device (config-l2vpn) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the L2VPN configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>l2vpn evpn instance</b> <i>instance-number</i> <b>vlan-based</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>l2vpn evpn instance 1</b> <b>vlan-based</b>	Configures VLAN based EVI in the L2VPN configuration mode. This command is optional if the route targets or the route distinguishers are not needed to be configured manually.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>encapsulation vxlan</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-l2vpn) # <b>encapsulation vxlan</b>	Defines the encapsulation format as VXLAN
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>route-target export</b> <i>route-target-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-l2vpn) # <b>route-target export 2:1</b>	Configures BGP route exchange.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>route-target import</b> <i>route-target-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-l2vpn) # <b>route-target import 2:1</b>	Configures BGP route exchange.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>no auto-route-target</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-l2vpn) # <b>no auto-route-target</b>	Removes the automatically generated route-targets.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-l2vpn) # <b>exit</b>	Exits the L2VPN configuration.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>vlan configuration</b> <i>vlan-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>vlan configuration 11</b>	Enters the vlan feature configuration mode.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>member evpn-instance</b> <i>evpn-instance-number</i> <b>vni</b> <i>vni-number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vlan) # <b>member evpn-instance 1 vni 11001</b>	Configures the evpn vxlan vni instance.

## Configuring access customer facing VLAN VTEP

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface gigabitethernet <i>slot/port</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface GigabitEthernet1/0/11</b>	Enters the interface configuration mode on the Gigabit Ethernet interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>switchport access vlan <i>vlan-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport access vlan 11</b>	Sets the access VLAN when the interface is in access mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>switchport mode access</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport mode access</b>	Sets the interface as a nontrunking nontagged single-VLAN Ethernet interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>interface gigabitethernet <i>slot/port</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface TenGigabitEthernet1/1/7</b>	Enters the interface configuration mode on the Gigabit Ethernet interface.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>switchport trunk allowed vlan <i>vlan_list</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport trunk allowed vlan 11-210,901-905</b>	Configures the VLAN ids of the allowed VLANs for the interface.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>switchport mode trunk</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Sets the interface as an Ethernet trunk port.

## Configuring IP VRF on VTEPs for Inter-VxLAN routing

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>vrf definition</b> <i>vrf-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>vrf definition</b> <b>tenant_1</b>	Configures a virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) routing-table instance and enters VRF configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>rd</b> <i>route-distinguisher</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf)# <b>rd</b> <b>1:1</b>	Creates routing and forwarding tables for a VRF.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>address-family</b> <b>ipv4</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf)# <b>address-family</b> <b>ipv4</b>	Enters address family configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>route-target export</b> <i>route-target-id</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf-af)# <b>route-target</b> <b>export</b> <b>1:1</b>	Creates a list of export RTs for the VRF with the same parameters.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>route-target import</b> <i>route-target-id</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf-af)# <b>route-target</b> <b>import</b> <b>1:1</b>	Creates a list of import RTs for the VRF with the same parameters.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>route-target import</b> <i>route-target-id</i> <b>stitching</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf-af)# <b>route-target</b> <b>import</b> <b>1:1</b> <b>stitching</b>	Configures importing of routes from the EVPN BGP that have the matching route-target value.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>route-target export</b> <i>route-target-id</i> <b>stitching</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf-af)# <b>route-target</b> <b>export</b> <b>1:1</b> <b>stitching</b>	Configures exporting of routes from the VRF to the EVPN BGP and assigns the specified route-target identifiers to the BGP EVPN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	<b>exit-address-family</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf-af) # <b>exit-address-family</b>	Exits address-family configuration mode.

## Verifying the VXLAN BGP EVPN Configuration

Command	Purpose
<b>show nve vni</b>	Displays VNIs associated in the NVE.
<b>show ip mroute</b>	Displays multicast routing table information.
<b>show ip mfib</b>	Displays forwarding entries and interfaces in the IPv4 Multicast Forwarding Information Base (MFIB).
<b>show ip pim neighbors</b>	Displays PIM neighbour table.
<b>show ip pim tunnel</b>	Displays information about the PIM register encapsulation and decapsulation tunnels on an interface.
<b>show ip pim rp</b>	Displays mapping information for the RP.
<b>show l2vpn evpn evi</b> [ <i>evpn-id</i>   <i>all</i> ]	Displays detailed information for a particular EVI or all EVIs.
<b>show mac address-table vlan</b> <b>vlan id</b>	Displays information for a specific VLAN.
<b>show l2route evpn mac</b> [ <i>all</i>   <i>evi</i> <i>vlan-id</i> ]	Displays MAC and IP address information learnt by the switch in the EVPN control plane.
<b>show bgp l2vpn evpn</b>	Displays BGP information for L2VPN-EVPN address family.
<b>show ip vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i>	Displays a summary of all VRFs present on the current router and their associated route-distinguishers and interface(s).
<b>show bgp vpnv4 unicast vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i>	Displays VPNv4 routes from BGP table for a specific vrf.
<b>show ip route vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i>	Displays the IP routing table associated with a specific VRF.
<b>show l2vpn evpn mac</b>	Displays the MAC address database for Layer 2 EVPN.
<b>show l2vpn evpn mac ip</b>	Displays the IP address database for Layer 2 EVPN.
<b>show l2route evpn mac ip</b>	Displays MAC IP routes.





**Note** Although the **show ip bgp** command is available for verifying a BGP configuration, as a best practice, it is preferable to use the **show bgp** command instead.

## Configuration Examples for VXLAN BGP EVPN (EBGP)

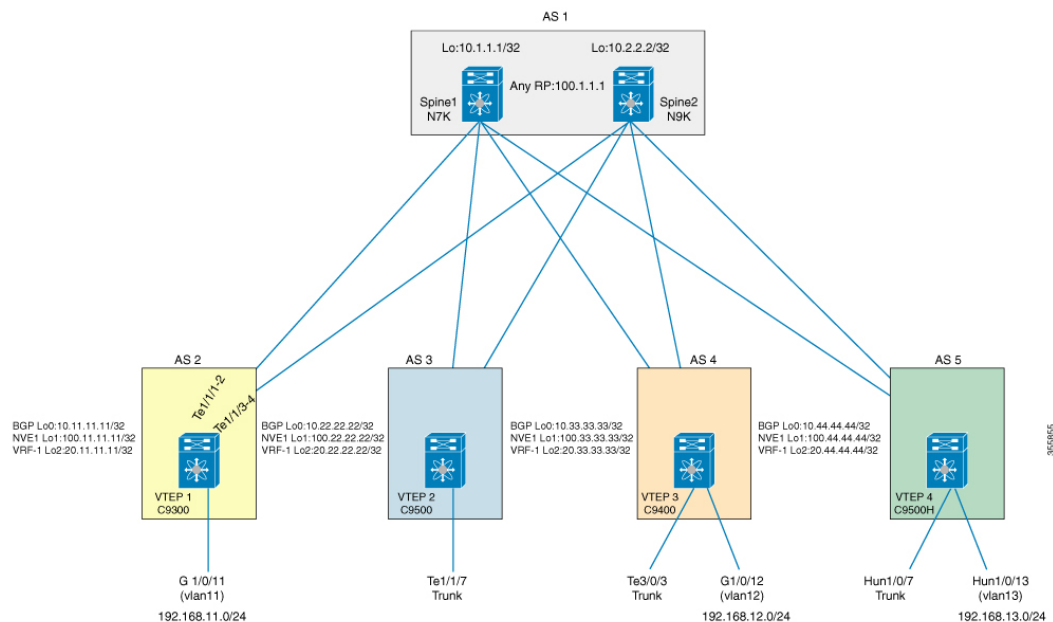
The following sections provide various configuration examples for VXLAN BGP EVPN:

### Configuration Examples for VxLAN BGP EVPN in Bridge Mode

The following section provides various examples for VxLAN BGP EVPN in bridge mode:

#### Example: Configuring eBGP Multi-AS EVPN VxLAN design model

*Figure 28: shows the topology used in the eBGP Multi-AS design model*



#### Example: Configuring Underlay Transport (Unicast and Multicast) Between all the VTEPs and the Spine(s):

##### Example

eBGP peering between the spine and the VTEPs requires IP connectivity. This can be achieved by using static routes to reach loopback addresses between VTEPs and spines.

Configuring the spine



**Note** The following Spine configuration is applicable to Cisco Nexus Series Switches and is not applicable to Cisco Catalyst 9000 Family Switches.

```
Device(config)# ip pim rp-address 100.1.1.1 group-list 239.0.0.0/8
Device(config)# ip pim rp-candidate loopback1 group-list 239.0.0.0/8
Device(config)# ip pim anycast-rp 100.1.1.1 10.1.1.1
Device(config)# ip pim anycast-rp 100.1.1.1 10.2.2.2
!
Device(config)# interface loopback0
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1/32
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
!
Device(config)# interface loopback1
Device(config-if)# ip address 100.1.1.1/32
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
!
Device(config)# interface port-channel1
Device(config-if)# mtu 9198
Device(config-if)# medium p2p
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.1.1/30
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
!
Device(config)# interface port-channel2
Device(config-if)# mtu 9198
Device(config-if)# medium p2p
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.2.1/30
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
!
Device(config)# interface port-channel3
Device(config-if)# mtu 9198
Device(config-if)# medium p2p
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.3.1/30
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
```

### Configuring the VTEP

```
Device(config)# ip multicast-routing
Device(config)# ip pim rp-address 100.1.1.1
!
Device(config)# ip routing
!
Device(config)# interface Loopback0
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.11.11.11 255.255.255.255
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Loopback1
Device(config-if)# ip address 100.11.11.11 255.255.255.255
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Loopback2
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding tenant_1
Device(config-if)# ip address 11.11.11.11 255.255.255.255
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Port-channel1
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.1.2 255.255.255.252
```

```

Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Port-channel11
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 20.20.1.2 255.255.255.252
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet1/1/2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode active
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet1/1/3
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# channel-group 11 mode active

```

## Example: Configuring eBGP with EVPN Address Family Between the Spine(s) and VTEPs:

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the spine



**Note** The following Spine configuration is applicable to Cisco Nexus Series Switches and is not applicable to Cisco Catalyst 9000 Family Switches.

```

Device(config)# ip prefix-list lo_prefix seq 5 permit 0.0.0.0/0 le 32
Device(config)# route-map NH-UNCHANGED permit 10
Device(config-route-map)# set ip next-hop unchanged
Device(config-route-map)# exit
Device(config)# route-map any_prefix permit 10
Device(config-route-map)# match ip address prefix-list lo_prefix
Device(config-route-map)# exit
!
Device(config)# router bgp 1
Device(config-router)# router-id 10.1.1.1
Device(config-router)# log-neighbor-changes
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Device(config-router-af)# redistribute direct route-map any_prefix
Device(config-router-af)# exit
Device(config-router)# address-family l2vpn evpn
Device(config-router-af)# nexthop route-map NH-UNCHANGED
Device(config-router-af)# retain route-target all
Device(config-router-af)# exit
!
Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.11.11.11 remote-as 2
Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.11.11.11 update-source loopback0
Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.11.11.11 ebgp-multihop 10
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.11.11.11 send-community both
Device(config-router-af)# soft-reconfiguration inbound
Device(config-router-af)# exit
Device(config-router)# address-family l2vpn evpn

```

**Example: Configuring NVE on all VTEPs**

```
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.11.11.11 send-community both
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.11.11.11 route-map NH-UNCHANGED out
```

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```
Device(config)# router bgp 2
Device(config-router)# bgp router-id interface Loopback0
Device(config-router)# bgp log-neighbor-changes
Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-restart
Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 remote-as 1
Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 ebgp-multihop 10
Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 update-source Loopback0
!
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4
Device(config-router-af)# redistribute connected
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 activate
Device(config-router-af)# exit-address-family
!
Device(config-router)# address-family l2vpn evpn
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 activate
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.1.1.1 send-community both
Device(config-router-af)# maximum-paths 2
Device(config-router-af)# exit-address-family
!
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 vrf tenant_1
Device(config-router-af)# advertise l2vpn evpn
Device(config-router-af)# redistribute connected
Device(config-router-af)# exit-address-family
```

**Example: Configuring NVE on all VTEPs****Example**

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```
Device(config)# interface nve1
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# source-interface Loopback1
Device(config-if)# host-reachability protocol bgp
Device(config-if)# member vni 11001 mcast-group 239.0.1.1
Device(config-if)# member vni 11002 mcast-group 239.0.1.1
Device(config-if)# member vni 900001 vrf tenant_1
```

**Example: Configuring L2VPN EVPN on VTEPs****Example**

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```
Device(config)# l2vpn evpn
Device(config-l2vpn)# replication-type static
Device(config-l2vpn)# router-id Loopback1
!
Device(config)# l2vpn evpn instance 1 vlan-based
Device(config-l2vpn)# encapsulation vxlan
Device(config-l2vpn)# route-target export 2:1
Device(config-l2vpn)# route-target import 2:1
Device(config-l2vpn)# no auto-route-target
```

```

!
Device(config)# l2vpn evpn instance 2 vlan-based
Device(config-l2vpn)# encapsulation vxlan
Device(config-l2vpn)# route-target export 2:2
Device(config-l2vpn)# route-target import 2:2
Device(config-l2vpn)# no auto-route-target

```

## Example: Configuring Access Customer Facing VLAN VTEPs

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```

Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet1/0/11
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 11
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
!
Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet1/1/7
Device(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 11-210,901-905
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk

```

## Example: Configuring Additional VNI, EVI and VLAN on VTEPs

### Example

```

Device(config)# vlan 4000
Device(config-vlan)# state active
Device(config)# vlan configuration 4000
Device(config-vlan)# member evpn-instance 20000

```

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```

Device(config)# vlan 11
Device(config-vlan)# state active
Device(config)# vlan 12
Device(config-vlan)# state active
Device(config)# vlan 901
Device(config-vlan)# state active
!
Device(config)# vlan configuration 11
Device(config-vlan)# member evpn-instance 1 vni 11001
!
Device(config)# vlan configuration 12
Device(config-vlan)# member evpn-instance 2 vni 11002
!

Device(config)# vlan configuration 901
Device(config-vlan)# member vni 900001
!
Device(config)# interface Vlan901
description connected to vni_900001
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding tenant_1
Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered Loopback2
!

```

```

Device(config)# interface nve1
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# source-interface Loopback1
Device(config-if)# host-reachability protocol bgp
Device(config-if)# member vni 11001 mcast-group 239.0.1.1
Device(config-if)# member vni 11002 mcast-group 239.0.1.1
Device(config-if)# member vni 900001 vrf tenant_1

```

## Example: Configuring IP VRF on VTEPs for Inter-VxLAN routing

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```

Device(config)# vrf definition tenant_1
Device(config-vrf)# rd 1:1
!
Device(config-vrf)# address-family ipv4
Device(config-vrf-af)# route-target export 1:1
Device(config-vrf-af)# route-target import 1:1
Device(config-vrf-af)# route-target export 1:1 stitching
Device(config-vrf-af)# route-target import 1:1 stitching
Device(config-vrf-af)# exit-address-family

```

## Example: Configuring Access VLAN Interfaces (SVIs) on VTEPs

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```

Device(config)# interface Vlan11
description vni_11001
mac-address 0001.0001.0001
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding tenant_1
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.254 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface Vlan12
description vni_11002
mac-address 0001.0001.0001
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding tenant_1
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.2.254 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit

```

## Example: Configuring Additional L3-VNI in NVE interfaces

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```

Device(config)# interface nve1
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# source-interface Loopback1
Device(config-if)# host-reachability protocol bgp
Device(config-if)# member vni 11001 mcast-group 239.0.1.1

```

```
Device(config-if)# member vni 11002 mcast-group 239.0.1.1
Device(config-if)# member vni 900001 vrf tenant_1
```

## Example: Configuring Core-facing VLANs and VLAN Interfaces

### Example

The following example shows how to configure the VTEP

```
Device(config)# vlan configuration 901
Device(config-vlan)# member vni 900001
Device(config)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Vlan901
description connected to vni_900001
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding tenant_1
Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered Loopback2
```

## Example: Configuring iBGP/IGP EVPN VxLAN Design Model

### Example

Configuring the spine:



**Note** The following Spine configuration is applicable to Cisco Nexus Series Switches and is not applicable to Cisco Catalyst 9000 Family Switches.

```
Device(config)# feature-set fabric
Device(config)# hostname spine-1
!
Device(config)# feature telnet
Device(config)# feature scp-server
Device(config)# feature fabric forwarding
Device(config)# nv overlay evpn
Device(config)# feature ospf
Device(config)# feature bgp
Device(config)# feature pim
Device(config)# feature ipp
Device(config)# feature isis
Device(config)# feature fabric multicast
Device(config)# feature interface-vlan
Device(config)# feature lldp
Device(config)# feature fabric access
Device(config)# feature nv overlay
Device(config)# feature nxapi
!
Device(config)# ip pim rp-address 4.5.4.5 group-list 224.0.0.0/4
!
Device(config)# vlan 1
!
Device(config)# interface Vlan1
```

```

!
Device(config)# interface Ethernet1/1 ip address 10.14.1.4/24
Device(config-if)# ip router ospf 1 area 0.0.0.0
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
!
Device(config)# interface loopback0
Device(config-if)# ip address 4.4.4.4/32
Device(config-if)# ip router ospf 1 area 0.0.0.0
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# interface loopback1
Device(config-if)# ip address 4.5.4.5/32
Device(config-if)# ip router ospf 1 area 0.0.0.0
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
!
Device(config)# router ospf 1
Device(config-router)# router-id 4.4.4.4
!
Device(config)# router bgp 100
Device(config-router)# router-id 4.4.4.4
Device(config-router)# address-family l2vpn evpn
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 1.1.1.1 remote-as 100
Device(config-router-af)# update-source loopback0
Device(config-router-af)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Device(config-router-af)# send-community both
Device(config-router-af)# route-reflector-client
Device(config-router-af)# address-family l2vpn evpn
Device(config-router-af)# send-community both
Device(config-router-af)# route-reflector-client

```

### Configuring the VTEP

```

Device(config)# vrf definition l3vni50000
Device(config-vrf)# rd 101:1
!
Device(config-vrf)# address-family ipv4
Device(config-vrf-af)# route-target export 100:1 stitching
Device(config-vrf-af)# route-target import 100:1 stitching
Device(config)# exit-address-family
!
Device(config)# ip multicast-routing
Device(config)# ip pim rp-address 4.5.4.5
!
Device(config)# l2vpn evpn
Device(config-l2vpn)# replication-type static
Device(config-l2vpn)# exit
!
Device(config)# vlan 10
Device(config-vlan)# State active
Device(config-vlan)# exit
Device(config)# vlan 11
Device(config-vlan)# State active
Device(config-vlan)# exit
Device(config)# vlan 501
Device(config-vlan)# state active
Device(config-vlan)# exit
!
Device(config)# vlan configuration 10
Device(config-vlan)# member evpn-instance 10 vni 100010
Device(config-vlan)# exit
!

```



```

Device(config)# vlan configuration 11
Device(config-vlan)# member evpn-instance 11 vni 100011
Device(config-vlan)# exit
!
Device(config)# vlan configuration 501
Device(config-vlan)# member vni 50000
Device(config-vlan)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Loopback0
Device(config-if)# ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.255
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# ip ospf 1 area 0
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet3/0/1
description To Spine1
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.14.1.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# ip ospf 1 area 0
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet3/0/2
description To Spine1
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.15.1.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)# ip ospf 1 area 0
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Vlan10
description connected to 100010
Device(config-if)# mac-address 0001.0001.0001
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding 13vni50000
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Vlan11
description connected to 100011
Device(config-if)# mac-address 0001.0001.0001
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding 13vni50000
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.11.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface Vlan501
description connected to 50000
Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding 13vni50000
Device(config-if)# ip unnumbered Loopback0
Device(config-if)# exit
!
Device(config)# router ospf 1
Device(config-router)# router-id 1.1.1.1
Device(config-router)# nsr
Device(config-router)# exit

```

## Example: Verifying L2/L3 VNI in NVE

```

!
Device(config)# router bgp 100
Device(config-router)# bgp router-id 1.1.1.1
Device(config-router)# bgp log-neighbor-changes
Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-restart
Device(config-router)# neighbor 4.4.4.4 remote-as 100
Device(config-router)# neighbor 4.4.4.4 update-source Loopback0
!
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4
Device(config-router-af)# redistribute connected
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 4.4.4.4 activate
Device(config-router-af)# exit-address-family
!
Device(config-router)# address-family l2vpn evpn
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 4.4.4.4 activate
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 4.4.4.4 send-community both
Device(config-router-af)# exit-address-family
!
Device(config)# address-family ipv4 vrf l3vni50000
Device(config-vrf-af)# advertise l2vpn evpn
Device(config-vrf-af)# redistribute connected
Device(config-vrf-af)# exit-address-family
Device(config-vrf)# exit
!
Device(config)# interface nve1
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# source-interface Loopback0
Device(config-if)# host-reachability protocol bgp
Device(config-if)# member vni 100010 mcast-group 227.0.0.1
Device(config-if)# member vni 100011 mcast-group 227.0.0.1
Device(config-if)# member vni 50000 vrf l3vni50000

```

## Example: Verifying L2/L3 VNI in NVE

## Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show nve vni** command

```

Device# show nve vni

Interface VNI Multicast-group VNI state Mode VLAN cfg vrf
nve1 60519 233.1.1.19 Up L2CP 519 CLI N/A
nve1 60518 233.1.1.18 Up L2CP 518 CLI N/A

```

## Example: Verifying Multicast in Multicast Routing Table

## Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show ip mroute** command

```

Device# show ip mroute
IP Multicast Routing Table
Outgoing interface flags: H - Hardware switched, A - Assert winner, p - PIM Join
Timers: Uptime/Expires
Interface state: Interface, Next-Hop or VCD, State/Mode
(*, 239.0.1.1), 5d16h/stopped, RP 100.1.1.1, flags: SJCFx
Incoming interface: Port-channel11, RPF nbr 20.20.1.1
Outgoing interface list:

```

```
Tunnel0, Forward/Sparse-Dense, 5d16h/00:01:17
!
(100.11.11.11, 239.0.1.1), 00:02:18/00:00:41, flags: FTx
Incoming interface: Loopback1, RPF nbr 0.0.0.0, Registering
Outgoing interface list:
Port-channel11, Forward/Sparse, 00:02:18/00:03:14
```

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show ip mfib** command

```
Device# show ip mfib
Forwarding Counts: Pkt Count/Pkts per second/Avg Pkt Size/Kbits per second
Other counts: Total/RPF failed/Other drops
I/O Item Counts: FS Pkt Count/PS Pkt Count
Default
(*,224.0.0.0/4) Flags: C HW
SW Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
HW Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
(*,224.0.1.40) Flags: C HW
SW Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
HW Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
Port-channel11 Flags: A NS
Loopback0 Flags: F IC NS
Pkts: 0/0
(*,239.0.1.1) Flags: C HW
SW Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
HW Forwarding: 187/0/190/0, Other: 0/0/0
Port-channel11 Flags: A NS
Tunnel0, VXLAN Decap Flags: F NS
Pkts: 0/0
(100.11.11.11,239.0.1.1) Flags: HW
SW Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
HW Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
Null0 Flags: A NS
Port-channel11 Flags: F NS
Pkts: 0/0
Tunnell1 Flags: F
Pkts: 0/0
```

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show ip pim neighbors** command

```
Device# show ip pim neighbors
PIM Neighbor Table
Mode: B - Bidir Capable, DR - Designated Router, N - Default DR Priority,
P - Proxy Capable, S - State Refresh Capable, G - GenID Capable,
L - DR Load-balancing Capable
Neighbor Interface Uptime/Expires Ver DR
Address Prio/Mode
10.10.1.1 Port-channel1 5d16h/00:01:40 v2 1 / G
20.20.1.1 Port-channel11 5d16h/00:01:20 v2 1 / G
```

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show ip pim tunnel** command

**Example: Verifying EVPN Instance in EVPN Manager**

```

Device# show ip pim tunnel
Tunnel1*
Type : PIM Encap
RP : 100.1.1.1
Source : 20.20.1.2
State : UP
Last event : Created (5d16h)
# sh ip pim rp
Group: 239.0.1.1, RP: 100.1.1.1, uptime 5d16h, expires never

```

**Example: Verifying EVPN Instance in EVPN Manager****Example**

The following example is a sample output of the **show l2vpn evpn evi 1 detail** command

```

Device# show l2vpn evpn evi 1 detail
EVPN instance: 1 (VLAN Based)
RD: 100.11.11.11:1 (auto)
Import-RTs: 2:1
Export-RTs: 2:1
Per-EVI Label: none
State: Established
Encapsulation: vxlan
Vlan: 11
Ethernet-Tag: 0
State: Established
Core If: Vlan901
Access If: Vlan11
RMAC: ec1d.8b75.eac8
Core Vlan: 901
L2 VNI: 11001
L3 VNI: 900001
VTEP IP: 100.11.11.11
MCAST IP: 239.0.1.1
VRF: tenant_1
Pseudoports:
TenGigabitEthernet1/1/7 service instance 11

```

**Example: Verifying MAC Table****Example**

The following example is a sample output of the **show mac address-table vlan** command

```

Device# show mac address-table vlan 11
Mac Address Table
-----
Vlan Mac Address Type Ports
---  -
11 0001.0001.0001 STATIC V111 -----□ SVI mac for Anycast Gateway
11 0011.0011.0005 DYNAMIC Te1/1/7-----□ dynamically learned
Total Mac Addresses for this criterion: 2

```

## Example: Verifying MAC entries in EVPN Manager

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show l2vpn evpn mac** command

```
Device# show l2vpn evpn mac
MAC Address EVI VLAN ESI Ether Tag Next Hop
-----
0011.0011.00c9 1 11 0000.0000.0000.0000.0000 0 Te1/1/7:11
0012.0012.0001 1 11 0000.0000.0000.0000.0000 0 100.22.22.22
0013.0013.0001 1 11 0000.0000.0000.0000.0000 0 100.33.33.33
0014.0014.0001 1 11 0000.0000.0000.0000.0000 0 100.44.44.44
```

## Example: Verifying MAC routes in BGP

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show bgp l2vpn evpn evi** command

```
Device# show bgp l2vpn evpn evi 1
BGP table version is 654847, local router ID is 10.11.11.11
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
r RIB-failure, S Stale, m multipath, b backup-path, f RT-Filter,
x best-external, a additional-path, c RIB-compressed,
t secondary path, L long-lived-stale,
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
RPKI validation codes: V valid, I invalid, N Not found
Network Next Hop Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 100.11.11.11:1
*> [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][0011001100C9][0][*]/20
:: 32768 ?
*> [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][001200120001][0][*]/20
100.22.22.22 0 1 3 ?
*> [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][001200120001][32][192.168.1.2]/24
100.22.22.22 0 1 3 ?
*> [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][001300130001][0][*]/20
100.33.33.33 0 1 4 ?
*> [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][001300130001][32][192.168.1.3]/24
100.33.33.33 0 1 4 ?
*> [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][001400140001][0][*]/20
100.44.44.44 0 1 4 ?
*> [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][001400140001][32][192.168.1.4]/24
100.44.44.44 0 1 4 ?
```

## Example: Verifying MAC routes in Layer 2 Routing Information Base

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show l2route evpn mac** command

```
Device# show l2route evpn mac
EVI ETag Prod Mac Address Next Hop(s) Seq Number
-----
1 0 BGP 0012.0012.0001 V:11001 100.22.22.22 0
1 0 BGP 0013.0013.0001 V:11001 100.33.33.33 0
```

### Example: Verifying IP VRF with all SVIs

```
1 0 BGP 0014.0014.0001 V:11001 100.44.44.44 0
1 0 L2VPN 0011.0011.00c9 Te1/1/7:11 0
```

## Example: Verifying IP VRF with all SVIs

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show ip vrf** command

```
Device# show ip vrf
Name                               Default RD      Interfaces
Mgmt-vrf                          <not set>      Gi0/0
tenant_1                          1:1            Lo2
                                         Vl11
                                         Vl12
```

## Example: Verifying MAC/IP entries in MAC VRFs (EVIs)

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show bgp l2vpn evpn evi** command

```
Device# show bgp l2vpn evpn evi 1 route-type 2
BGP routing table entry for [2][100.11.11.11:1][0][48][0011001100C9][32][10.0.0.2]/24,
version 7
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table evi_1)
  Advertised to update-groups:
    1
  Refresh Epoch 1
  Local
    :: (via default) from 0.0.0.0 (10.11.11.11)
    Origin incomplete, localpref 100, weight 32768, valid, sourced, local, best
    EVPN ESI: 00000000000000000000, Label1 11001- L2 VNI
    Extended Community: RT:2:1 ENCAP:8
    Local irb vxlan vtep:
      vrf:tenant_1, l3-vni:900001----- IP VRF and L3 VNI
      local router mac:EC1D.8B75.EAC8
      core-irb interface:Vlan901---- core SVI
      vtep-ip:100.11.11.11
      rx pathid: 0, tx pathid: 0x0
```

## Example: Verifying Remote MAC/IP and IP Prefix routes in L3VNI (IP VRF)

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show bgp vpnv4 unicast vrf** command

```
Device# show bgp vpnv4 unicast vrf tenant_1
BGP table version is 8583, local router ID is 10.11.11.11
  Network      Next Hop      Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 1:1 (default for vrf tenant_1)
AF-Private Import to Address-Family: L2VPN E-VPN, Pfx Count/Limit: 11/1000
*>  11.11.11.11/32  0.0.0.0          0          32768 ?
*>  11.22.22.22/32  100.22.22.22     0 1 3 ?
*>  11.33.33.33/32  100.33.33.33     0 1 4 ?
*>  11.44.44.44/32  100.44.44.44     0 1 4 ?
```

```

*      192.168.1.0          100.44.44.44          0 1 4 ?
*
*      100.33.33.33          0 1 4 ?
*      100.22.22.22          0 1 3 ?
*>      0.0.0.0          0          32768 ?
*> 192.168.1.2/32  100.22.22.22          0 1 3 ?
*> 192.168.1.3/32  100.33.33.33          0 1 4 ?
*> 192.168.1.4/32  100.44.44.44          0 1 4 ?
*      192.168.2.0          100.44.44.44          0 1 4 ?
*
*      100.33.33.33          0 1 4 ?
*      100.22.22.22          0 1 3 ?
*>      0.0.0.0          0          32768 ?

```

## Example: Verifying IP routes are installed in L3 VNI (IP VRF)

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show ip route vrf** command:

```

Device# show ip route vrf tenant_1
Routing Table: tenant_1
Gateway of last resort is not set

    11.0.0.0/32 is subnetted, 3 subnets
C       11.11.11.11 is directly connected, Loopback2
B       11.22.22.22 [20/0] via 100.22.22.22, 00:13:21, Vlan901
B       11.33.33.33 [20/0] via 100.33.33.33, 00:13:21, Vlan901
B       11.44.44.44 [20/0] via 100.44.44.44, 00:12:51, Vlan901
    192.168.1.0/24 is variably subnetted, 4 subnets, 2 masks
C       192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, Vlan11
B       192.168.1.3/32 [20/0] via 100.33.33.33, 16:26:48, Vlan901
B       192.168.1.4/32 [20/0] via 100.44.44.44, 2d19h, Vlan901
L       192.168.1.254/32 is directly connected, Vlan11
    192.168.2.0/24 is variably subnetted, 4 subnets, 2 masks
C       192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, Vlan12
B       192.168.2.3/32 [20/0] via 100.33.33.33, 02:52:20, Vlan901
B       192.168.2.4/32 [20/0] via 100.44.44.44, 2d19h, Vlan901
L       192.168.2.254/32 is directly connected, Vlan12
    192.168.3.0/24 is variably subnetted, 4 subnets, 2 masks
C       192.168.3.0/24 is directly connected, Vlan13
B       192.168.3.3/32 [20/0] via 100.33.33.33, 2d19h, Vlan901

```

## Example: Verifying MAC/IP entries in EVPN Manager

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show l2vpn evpn mac** command:

```

Device# show l2vpn evpn mac ip

IP Address  EVI  VLAN  MAC Address  Next Hop(s)
-----
10.0.0.1  1  11  0011.0011.00c9  Te1/1/7:11
10.0.0.2  1  11  0012.0012.0001  100.22.22.22

```

## Example: Verifying MAC/IP routes in Layer 2 Routing Information Base

### Example

The following example is a sample output of the **show l2route evpn mac** command:

```
Device# show l2route evpn mac ip
```

```
EVI ETag Prod Mac Address Host IP Next Hop(s)
-----
1 0 BGP 0012.0012.0001 10.0.0.2 V:11001 100.22.22.22
1 0 L2VPN 0011.0011.00c9 10.0.0.1 Te1/1/7:11
```

## Feature History and Information for VXLAN BGP EVPN

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

**Table 17: Feature History for VXLAN BGP EVPN**

Release	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	<p>VXLAN is a MAC in IP/UDP overlay that allows layer 2 segments to be stretched across an IP core. VXLAN EVPN BGP operates in Bridged and Routed modes.</p> <p>The feature was introduced with IPv4 and IPv6 support in Bridged mode and with IPv4 support in Routed mode.</p>